

Soul Blade History Book FAQ

by DLG

Updated to v1.0 on Oct 20, 2002

Version 1.0
October 20th 2002

History of Soul
The SoulEdge/Blade & Soul Calibur History Book

For SoulEdge/SoulBlade, Soul Calibur, Soul Calibur II for arcade and console

written by: DLG
E-Mail: God@magicaldreamerz.de
ICQ: 119465293

The purpose of this faq is to tell the history of these great games as it is written in them, this way people can enjoy the story without actually having to play the games.

This is a compilation of all the texts I've been able to find which are either in the game, manuals or respective web sites, any help in checking this faq, or rather history book, would be greatly accepted.

You will need to use an editor with unicode enabled to view the japanese portions of this faq.

This faq should only be found at:

<http://www.gamefaqs.com>
<http://www.psxcodez.com>
<https://www.neoseeker.com>

or my site:

<http://www.magicaldreamerz.de>

1. Legal stuff
2. Soul Edge/Blade
 - 2.0 Prologue (Manual)
 - 2.1 Edgemaster Books
 - 2.1.01 Hwang
 - 2.1.02 Rock
 - 2.1.03 Taki
 - 2.1.04 Sophitia
 - 2.1.05 Mitsurugi
 - 2.1.06 Siegfried
 - 2.1.07 Seung Mina
 - 2.1.08 Li Long
 - 2.1.09 Voldo
 - 2.1.10 Cervantes

- 2.2 Weapon Room
 - 2.2.01 Hwang
 - 2.2.02 Rock
 - 2.2.03 Taki
 - 2.2.04 Sophitia
 - 2.2.05 Mitsurugi
 - 2.2.06 Siegfried
 - 2.2.07 Seung Mina
 - 2.2.08 Li Long
 - 2.2.09 Voldo
 - 2.2.10 Cervantes

3. Soul Calibur Arcade/Website

3.1 History

- 3.1.00 Prologue
- 3.1.01 Chapter I: Kilik - Awaken Destiny
- 3.1.02 Chapter II: Xianghua - Itenerant Flower of the Breeze
- 3.1.03 Chapter III: Maxi - Dandy from the South Sea
- 3.1.04 Chapter IV: Mitsurugi - Mercenary in a Warlike Age
- 3.1.05 Chapter V: Taki - Dream Shadow of Demon Sealer
- 3.1.06 Chapter VI: Voldo - Hell Guardian
- 3.1.07 Chapter VII: Sophitia - Second Advent of the Vow
- 3.1.08 Chapter VIII: Astaroth - A Soldier of the Heretic
- 3.1.09 Chapter IX: Nightmare - Azure Nightmare
- 3.1.10 Chapter X: Ivy - Wreathing Blade of Isolation
- 3.1.11 Chapter XI: Hwang - Patriot's Burning Soul
- 3.1.12 Chapter XII: Yoshimitsu - The First Mechanized Ninja
- 3.1.13 Chapter XIII: Lizardman/Plumeria - Jasper Scales of Shudder
- 3.1.14 Chapter XIV: Siegfried - A Soul in Purgatory
- 3.1.15 Chapter XV: Rock - The Trembling Earth
- 3.1.16 Chapter XVI: Seung Mina - Heart and Soul Girl
- 3.1.17 Chapter XVII: Edge Master - The Master of Blades

3.2 Stages of History (Website)

4. Soul Calibur Dreamcast

4.1 History/Profiles

- 4.1.00 Prologue
- 4.1.01 Kilik
- 4.1.02 Xianghua
- 4.1.03 Maxi
- 4.1.04 Mitsurugi
- 4.1.05 Taki
- 4.1.06 Voldo
- 4.1.07 Sophitia
- 4.1.08 Astaroth
- 4.1.09 Nightmare
- 4.1.10 Ivy
- 4.1.11 Hwang
- 4.1.12 Yoshimitsu
- 4.1.13 Lizardman
- 4.1.14 Siegfried
- 4.1.15 Rock
- 4.1.16 Seung Mina
- 4.1.17 Edge Master
- 4.1.18 Cervantes
- 4.1.19 Inferno

4.2 Mission Books

4.2.1 Middle Map

- 4.2.1.1 Proving Grounds
- 4.2.1.2 Harbor of Souls
- 4.2.1.3 Silk Road Ruins
- 4.2.1.4 Kunpaetku Shrine
- 4.2.1.5 Palgaea Shrine
- 4.2.1.6 Maze of the Dead

4.2.2 Left Map

- 4.2.2.1 Ostrheinsburg Castle
- 4.2.2.2 City of Water
- 4.2.2.3 The Colosseum
- 4.2.2.4 Shrine of Eurydice
- 4.2.2.5 Money Pit
- 4.2.2.6 The Adrian and the Fortress
- 4.2.2.7 Valentine Mansion

4.2.3 Right Map

- 4.2.3.1 Empror's Garden
- 4.2.3.2 Takamatsu Castle
- 4.2.3.3 Hoko Temple
- 4.2.3.4 Water Labyrinth

4.2.4 Special Missions

- 4.2.4.1 Pit/Swamp
- 4.2.4.2 Secret Dojo
- 4.2.4.3 Chaos

5. Soul Calibur II

5.0 Japanese site

5.0.1 History

- 5.0.1.00 Prologue
- 5.0.1.01 Astaroth
- 5.0.1.02 Cassandra
- 5.0.1.03 Ivy
- 5.0.1.04 Kilik
- 5.0.1.05 Maxi
- 5.0.1.06 Mitsurugi
- 5.0.1.07 Nightmare
- 5.0.1.08 Raphael
- 5.0.1.09 Taki
- 5.0.1.10 Talim
- 5.0.1.11 Voldo
- 5.0.1.12 Xianghua
- 5.0.1.13 Yunsung
- 5.0.1.14 Yoshimitsu
- 5.0.1.15 Cervantes
- 5.0.1.16 Charade

5.1 English site

5.1.1 History

- 5.1.1.00 Prologue
- 5.1.1.01 Astaroth
- 5.1.1.02 Cassandra
- 5.1.1.03 Ivy
- 5.1.1.04 Kilik
- 5.1.1.05 Maxi
- 5.1.1.06 Mitsurugi
- 5.1.1.07 Nightmare
- 5.1.1.08 Raphael

- 5.1.1.09 Taki
- 5.1.1.10 Talim
- 5.1.1.11 Voldo
- 5.1.1.12 Xianghua
- 5.1.1.13 Yunsung
- 5.1.1.14 Yoshimitsu
- 5.1.1.15 Cervantes
- 5.1.1.16 Charade

6. The Reality

6.1 Interviews (Website)

- 6.1.1 Yotoriyama-san
- 6.1.2 Ishiguro-san
- 6.1.3 Nimura-san
- 6.1.4 Ishizu-san
- 6.1.5 Yamashita-san
- 6.1.6 Inoue-san
- 6.1.7 Nakamura-san
- 6.1.8 Shibue-san
- 6.1.9 Hirata-san

6.2 Weapons

- 6.2.01 Katana
 - 6.2.01.1 A Short History of the Japanese Sword
- 6.2.02 Bo Staff
- 6.2.03 Tai Chi Sword
- 6.2.04 Nunchaku
- 6.2.05 Tanto
- 6.2.06 Jutte
- 6.2.07 Chinese Broadsword
- 6.2.08 Tonfa
- 6.2.09 Butterfly Swords
- 6.2.10 Naginata

6.3 Locals

6.4 People

- 6.4.1 Seiyuu/Voice Actors

6.5 Historical facts

7. Version Stuff

8. Planned Stuff

9. Credits

1. Legal stuff

This faq can't be claimed as the work of another except as the authors, you may not sell this or use it in any way to gain profit. The characters and game are the property of NAMCO. If you want to host this faq on your site contact me first.

=====
=====

2. Soul Edge/Blade
2.0 Prologue (Manual)

The Tale of the Legendary Weapon:
Soul Edge

(as told by bosun Wm. Bones at the Fairweather Inn. 1572)

KNOW THIS; these whispered tales of a sword that can cut the very heavens asunder are true! This SouleEdge exists! Many have tried to possess this legendary weapon but all have fallen to a horrible fate. Vercci, the Italian weapon merchant sought out the blade and you know of his grisly end! His agent, the pirate Cervantes de Leon was last said to possess the sword and
----- has not been seen since! That blade is
| | | cursed as sure as I sit here! Bewarned, ye
| | | are not the only one on this quest! Ten
| | | warriors from around the globe seek the
| | | blade for their own desires. For some,
| Cervantes | | Soul Edge is their key to salvation; for
| de | | others, their route to damnation. None of
| Leon | | them will back down without a fight! Only
| | | the stout of heart and strong of arm can
| | | survive. Heed my warnings! They say to
| | | hold Soul Edge is to possess true power,
| | | but ye cannot hold on to it and your own
----- soul at the same time...

The ten Warriors

Heishiro Mitsurugi
"Lone Swordsman"

Nationality : Japan Birth Date : June 8

Height : 168 cm Blood Type : AB

Weight : 59kg Fighting Style : Mitsurugi

Age : 22 Weapon : Korefuji

Seung Mi Na "Heart & Soul" Girl

Nationality : South Korea

Height : 159 cm

Weight : 46 kg

Age : 16

Birth Date : November 3

Blood Type : A

Fighting Style : Seung's Long Blade

Weapn : Zanbatoh

Li Long "Rage of Executor"

Nationality : China Birth Date : October 23

Height : 168 cm Blood Type : B

Weight : 55 kg Fighting Style : Matchless Dragon

Age : 24 Weapon : Nunchaku "Snakewind"

Taki "Underground Hunter"

Nationality : Japan

Height : 170 cm

Weight : 55 kg

Age : 22

Birth Date : Unknown

Blood Type : A

Fighting Style : Dream-Slashed Sword

Weapon : Katana "Rekki-maru"

Voldo "Hell Guardian"

Nationality : Italy

Height : 183 cm

Weight : 79 kg

Age : 43

Birth Date : August 25

Blood Type : A

Fighting Style : Own Style

Weapon : Katar "Karma & Mara"

Sophitia Alexandra "Emotional Goddess"

Nationality : Greece Birth Date : March 12
Height : 168 cm Blood Type : B
Weight : Secret Fighting Style : Athena
Age : 18 Weapon : Short Sword "Omega"
 Small Shield "Owl"

Siegfried Schtauffen "Innocent"

Nationality : Germany Birth Date : February 6
Height : 157 cm Blood Type : A
Weight : 48 kg Fighting Style : Own Style
Age : 16 Weapon : Zweihander "Faust"

Rock "Reckless Commando"

Nationality : New World
Height : 175 cm
Weight : 81 kg
Age : 35
Birth Date : December 14
Blood Type : Unknown
Fighting Style : Own Style
Weapon : Battle Ax "Apocalypse"

Hwang Sung Kyung
"The Hero in the Warlike Age"

Nationality : South Korea Birth Date : August 8
Height : 171 cm Blood Type : AB
Weight : 60 kg Fighting Style : Seung's Long Blade

Age : 25

Long Sword "Bluestorm"

Cervantes de Leon "The Immortal Pirate"

Nationality : Spain

Height : 17 cm

Weight : 80 kg

Age : 48 (Immortal)

Birth Date : January 1

Blood Type : O

Fighting Style : Possessed

Weapon : Legendary Sword "SoulEdge"

=====
=====
2.1 Edgemaster Books

2.1.01 Hwang

Name:

Hwang Sung Kyung

Age: 25

Born: Dec. 14

Height: 171 cm (5'7")

Weight: 60 kg (132 lb)

Blood Type: AB

Family: Parents (deceased).

Seung Han Myong (master)

Weapon:

Longsword "Blue Storm"

Style: Seung's Long Blade

Hwang Sung Kyung, was born in a poor, yet peaceful family. He grew up strong and healthy despite the warlike age.

His childhood memories of his parents were of brave people with a strong sense of justice. However, their righteousness was their downfall.

His parents' death was

a painful experience to overcome.

Now, he is a man.

"I was protected by a lot of people. Now, it is time for me to protect others."

He enrolled himself into a dojo to learn the long blade.

He had an innate talent for it. He practiced as much as possible. It didn't take him too long to become the best student. At last, he could have a private lesson from the school's master, Seung Han Myong.

Master Seung was happy to have such a talented young student. He had a child who was still small yet very talented. However, one thing worried him about his child. It was a she, instead of a he.

Master Seung seemed to be seriously thinking of adopting Hwang as his son.

Master Seung didn't get a chance to talk with Hwang about it. The world was plunged into a dreadful situation. Among the Asian countries, Japan first settled its civil war and started invading the main land.

It is not too late! People rallied under the Sea Force admiral Le Shun Jin and prepared to defend their mother land against the coming invasion.

They started building fortresses along the coast lines. A Coast Guard was formed and Hwang was first to volunteer.

Those who were eager to devote their lives to the savior of their mother land,

were fervently talking about the Legendary Patriot Sword, "SoulEdge," that they had heard of from the West.

When the rumor spread to every part of the country, Hwang was ordered to search for "SoulEdge."

"It is time for me to save others."

The Pirate's Castle

Noto Castle, belongs to Noto-Murakami and Setonai Pirates of the Mori Sea Force. The island itself is formed as a pirate castle and port.

It is said that valuable weapons are gathered and are stored in this castle.

As a member of the Coastal Defense Force, Hwang was ordered to investigate the pirates. He stowed away in a trading ship and infiltrated the castle.

But, when he was leaving, he was spotted by a samurai guard.

"Name yourself"

Yelled the samurai as he drew his sword.

Hwang recognized the man and knew he must fight!

Heishiro Mitsurugi

Age: 22

Born: Jun. 8

Weapon: Korefuji

Style: Mitsurugi

The Lone Swordsman

He is a well-known swordsman. And quite a challenge!

Beat him quickly before you run out of time! Others are coming!

Hwang defeated Mitsurugi with his quick sword attack

and martial arts. He took Mitsurugi's "Nippon Blade" and escaped from the castle before other pursuers came.

The Old Temple

The Chii Mountain is located on the Southern edge of Korean Peninsula. At the bottom of the mountain, there is an historical temple. The temple was built in the 4th century, and the huge stage in front of it has been used for training by Seung Dojo students.

Hwang, ordered to search for the SoulEdge, stopped by to visit his master Seung Han Myong before he left for the west.

Han Myong said to Hwang,

"I am going to give you the final lesson."

Han Myong and Hwang stood on the stone stage of the temple, then calmly forced each other.

Seung Han Myong
Age: 46
Born: Mar. 31
Weapon:
Mountain Breaker
Style:
Seung's long blade

The Master is the expert of the long blade technique!

Survive his attack within the time limit!

Hwang skillfully defended himself against Han Myong's constant attacks.

"Well done! I've taught you all I know. Hwang.... Take my sword and carry on the long blade technique."

Hwang was given the Seito Sword "Mountain Breaker" from his master. He then left for the west. He didn't know that Han

Myong's daughter, Mi Na,
would leave her home to
follow him a few days
later.

The Gorge

San Kyo is the deep gulch
located in the middle reaches
of the great Chinese river,
Yangtze.

Hwang, on his trip in China,
reached the great river.

Hwang was drifting down the
river when an arrow skimmed
his cheek!

"Ow! What the!?"

Hwang looked behind and found
a man standing on the edge of
his raft.

"That was just to weaken you.
Now I'm going to finish you
off!"

Hwang's body numbed the
arrow's poison. The man drew
his weapon and attacked.

Li Long
Age: 24
Born: Oct. 23
Weapon:
Snake Wind
Style:
Matchless Dragon

Rage of the Executor

He was an assassin sent by
the Ming Dynasty. To find
the killer of his lover Chie,
he returned to China and
is attacking every single
swordsman who passes through
the gulch.

Before the poison spreads,
use your throwing techniques
to defeat him!

After a heavy battle, Hwang
defeated Li and took his Curved
Sword "Thunderous Fire"
which was made in the Toh
period!

Fortunately, the poison soon wore off.

The Desert

The desert area spreads throughout the middle of Asia. It is the most dangerous place for travellers who choose to travel across the continent.

You may notice the remains of an ancient Chinese fortresses. It is truly a deadly road.

Seung Mi Na

Age: 16

Born: Dec. 3

Weapon: Halbard

Style:

Seung's long blade

"Heart & Soul" Girl

As the only daughter of Seung Han Myong, she was eager to find the Legendary Sword. She didn't listen to her father who tried to stop her and left to find SoulEdge. After months of following Hwang's trail, she finally caught up with him.

Even though it has been a long time since they saw each other, Hwang didn't look happy to see her.

"Listen to me! Go back to your father."

"Never! I'll never go back without the Patriot Sword!"

"Well, if you defeat me, you can go on!" Hwang said.

"Prepare yourself!" She cried.

Knock away your enemy's weapon!

It was a rigorous battle of wills, but Hwang's technique overwhelmed Mi Na.

The young girl reluctantly gave up on her dangerous

journey and returned home.

The Colosseum

The secret arena has been rumored to have fighters gather from all over the world. It is said that the winner gets a valuable weapon.

Hwang went to the Colosseum.

In front of the Colosseum, there was a sign that said:

TODAY'S BATTLES
SURVIVAL BATTLE
DEFEAT FOUR FIGHTERS IN A ROW
WINNER GETS
AN EXPENSIVE WEAPON

Defeat four fighters in a row!

1st Match

vs. Heishiro Mitsurugi

2nd Match

vs. Taki

3rd Match

vs. Li Long

4th Match

vs. Rock

The battles lasted for a long time but Hwang won all of the matches.

Hwang was rewarded with the weapon "Falchion."

Eurydice Shrine

The Shrins is said to be build by the God Hephaestus. He was a blacksmith who forged weapons and armor, among many things

Rumor says that a girl received an oracle and was given the sacred armor in this place.

In the Shrins, Hwang heard a voice coming from the sky.

"You, the warrior searching for the evil sword SoulEdge.

Survive my test and prove your worth."

A female fighter appeared in a flash of holy light.

"She is the rumored one!" Hwang whispered.

Sophitia Alezandra

Age: 18

Born: Mar. 12

Weapon: Gaea Sword

Style: Athena

Emotional Goddess

The girl who receives an oracle from Hephaestus. She prevents disasters caused by those who are misled by the evil sword, and travels the world with the sword and shield forged by the God himself.

Defeat all enemies with crushing mid-air combos!

Hwang, defeated both Sophitia and his own illusion. He was given the sword "Sword Of Dawn" by the God.

When Hwang held the sword in his hand, he felt a warm pulse and the will of Hephaestus urging him to "Destroy the evil Soul Edge."

The Secret Treasury

The secret treasury is on an unknown island. The millionaire Vercci hid his treasure here. There are 50 meter deep pits, water traps, and more to guard against theft. It is the perfect impregnable treasure island.

Tales tell that there is a tremendous amount of treasure on this remote island....

Hwang heard the stories and travelled to the island. He was tormented by traps, but finally reached the bottom of the lair.

There was a guardian in
strange armor blocking the
brightly sparkling treasure.

Voldo

Age: 43

Born: Aug.25

Weapon: Iron Claw

Style: Own Style

Hell Guardian

His only task is guarding the
treasure.

From living in the dark for
a long time, his eye sight and
sanity have weakened, but he
has killed all who have entered
into the pit with his cruel
assassination techniques.

Defeat the enemy!

After a deadly battle, Hwang
defeated the Hell Guardian,
Voldo

Although "SoulEdge" was not
among the treasure, he found a
solid gold sword, known as the
"Midas Blade" and an important
clue to the whereabouts of
"SoulEdge."

The Final Battle

At last Hwang arrived at the
place he believed "Souledge"
was located.

A port harbor in Spain where
the great pirate Cervantes de
Leon was once based. The
pirate ship Adrian lay anchored
in the dock.

"There's evil all around...

I must be close!"

Hwang prepared himself, then
stepped on the ship.

On the deck, he found a man
who held ominously shining
swords in his hands.

"Ha Ha Ha! I've been waiting
for you. Your burning soul
will soon belong to my holy

blades!"

Cervantes de Leon
Age: 48 (Immortal)
Born: Jan.1
Weapon: SoulEdge
Style: Possessed

The Immortal Pirate

The great pirate was feared by all who sailed the Atlantic Ocean. Decades ago, he left on a trip to find SoulEdge for the merchant Vercci, but disappeared, never to be seen again.

Defeat the enemy!

Hwang defeated the ghost and found "SoulEdge."

However, in his eyes, the legendary sword did not look "patriotic."
"Evil" was perhaps a better word.

"How painful to discover the Patriot Sword I was searching is actually one of destruction."

He raised the sword and threw it away, never to be seen again.

However, his brave travels in search of the Patriot Sword were still the talk of Korea.

Even though he returned empty handed, he received a warm welcome. What he had lost in hope he had gained in strength and wisdom.

It was not long before the war against Japan finally began. He entered battle to protect his mother land displaying great bravery, justice and love.

=====
=====

2.1.02 Rock

Name: Rock
Age: 35
Born: Dec.14

Height: 175 cm (5'8")
Weight: 81 kg (178 lb)
Blood type: unknown
Family: Parents: Whereabouts
unknown.
Bangoo: His orphaned ward.
Weapon: Battle Ax
Style: Own Style

He it a giant living on the
Savannah of the New World.

He was born "Nathaniel
William Adams" in England.
He was nicknamed "Rock"
because of his strength. His
father ran a curio store
specializing in rare weapons
and was always taken with
strange antiquities. He had a
loving mother and with it, an
idyllic childhood; until that
fateful day...

"Rock, look at the "SoulEdge."
Isn't it a beauty?"

His father's wish had finally
been fulfilled. He showed his
son the sword in the ship's
cabin. "At last, "SoulEdge,"
the hero's sword..."

The storm that buffeted the
ship scared young Rock to the
point of tears. His Father was
too excited to even notice.
His mother, frustrated, led
Rock to the hammock. Just then...

Cannon fire sounded and the
ship rocked from a direct hit!
Rock screamed in terror. His
Father and Mother held him
tight as the cries of the crew
echoed: "Pirates!"

The Spanish pirate Cervantes,
confederate of Vercci, the
Italian "Merchant of Death,"
had started his attack. His
goal was none other than
"SoulEdge."

Father ran to the ship's storeroom to hide the "Soul Edge," After another explosion, Rock's Mother ran after to stop him.

"Rock, stay here until we return!"

His parents never did. Before they could, the ship sank.

Rock awoke on an unfamiliar shoreline, alone

At first, Rock cried out, looking for his parents. Eventually he learned to live off the land to survive; discarding former habits and language.

It was at this point that he first came upon other living people, a tribe native to the area. Afraid of the "white giant," they would not approach him. The child Bangoo, an orphan of tribal warfare, was the sole consolation for Rock, who was now an adult.

From the natives, Rock re-learned about the "people across the ocean." Faded memories of his parents and even "SoulEdge" returned.

He remembered having heard the words "SoulEdge." It was a word he had heard often as a child. At bedtime, mealtime, while being held in someone's arms ... a hazy image formed in his mind. If he could find the "SoulEdge," perhaps he could recover his own past. He might even find his parents!

With his giant ax in hand, Rock set out for the land across the sea.

The Journey

Savannah, the New World. A mysterious forest of megaliths

stands in the center of a wide crater.

After taking leave of Bangoo, he set out on his quest to find "SoulEdge," the key to his memories. Rock eventually came across something strange.

"What's that?"

In this sacred site, Rock caught sight of an inhuman shadow.

Suspicious, he climbed to the top of one of the monoliths, where he spied a man holding a strange weapon.

The man whirled as Rock approached and assuming a strange position, suddenly attacked!

Voldo

Age: 43

Born: Aug.25

Weapon: Katar

Style: Own Style

Hell Guardian

Carrying out the will of his dead master, Vercci, Voldo set out to find the "SoulEdge." While his sight and mind have decayed with long years of lowless living, he still wields a quick sword!

Defeat the enemy!

Rock pushed Voldo from the edge of the monolith. The strange man dropped a parchment as he plunged to his fate. Rock picked up the piece of paper.

At first, the letters appeared to be meaningless squiggles... Finally, he realized that the letters were a language.

"S-O-U-L Edge!"

He realized that this note was an important clue in his

search for the SoulEdge.

Carrying a "Stone Club," chiseled from one of the monoliths, he immediately set out in the direction of the setting sun.

The Shrine of Confined Demons

A haunted shrine stood in a bamboo grove. It had been built by Taki to imprison evil spirits. A small shrine holds the ghost's haunted weapon.

Rock entered the shrine and found the weapon at the altar, as he grabbed it, he passed out.

When he came to, many people wielding swords stood before him.

"Kill them, cut them down!"

A voice echoed in his head. Rock had become a homicidal demon.

Heishiro Mitsurugi

Age: 22

Born: Jun.8

Weapon Korefuji

Style: Mitsurugi

A young warrior who won fame during the war. He quells demons.

Taki

Age: 22

Born: ?

Weapon: Rekkimaru

Style: B

Dream-slashed sword

The female ninja who sealed the shrine.

Defeat all who appear!

"What has ... happened to me?"

After defeating Mitsurugi and Taki, Rock momentarily recovered himself. Another Rock appeared before his eyes.

"Let me become one with myself

again!"

At the end of the fierce fighting, Rock was released from the ghost's spell. He picked up the "Crescent Ax" from the shrine's altar.

The Desert

A desert region in Central Asia. For the traveller who had avoided the perils of the ocean journey to cross the continent by land, this was the most difficult passage.

The ruins of an ancient Chinese citadel lay behind, but nothing else was to be seen on this desolate road.

Rock searched for the legendary weapon in the ruins of the citadel. However, the weapon had already been unearthed by someone else.

Footprints led from the excavation site. In the distance he spied the images of a man and woman.

Rock yelled.

"I need that weapon!"

Hwang Sung Kyung

Age: 25

Born: Aug.8

Weapon: Blue Storm

Style: Seung's long blade

Searching for the "Patriot Sword" to save his homeland.

Seung Mi Na

Age: 16

Born: Nov.3

Weapon: Zanbatoh

Style:

Seung's long blade

Daughter of a warrior family, she left home to follow Hwang.

Use the throw technique to defeat them!

Rock defeated Mi Na and Hwang, taking the weapon "War Hammer" which they had unearthed. But it was not SoulEdge. Rock travelled on.

The Arena

Veteran fighters from all over the world gather here. It is said that victors are awarded with a priceless weapon. Rock found his way to the arena and took place in the contest, hoping win SoulEdge.

Defeat all three opponents!

Li Long
Age: 24
Born: Oct.23
Weapon: Steel Dragon
Style:
Matchless Dragon

Sophitia Alexandra
Age: 18
Born: Mar.12
Weapon:
Sword Breaker
Style: Athena

Heishiro Mitsurugi
Age: 22
Born: Jun.8
Weapon: Korefuji
Style: Mitsurugi

After a fierce fight, Rock was able to triumph over three opponents. Li Long who used a nunchaku; the swordswoman Sophitia, who mounted a stout defense with her sacred sword and shield; and Heishiro Mitsurugi, with whom he had crossed swords as a demon at the Shrine.

The victorious Rock was awarded the "Twin Ax" as a prize.

Ostrhinesburg Castle

Castle of the knight Stefan, at war with Marquis Andre. It is now the height of battle and the castle is about to

fall. Apparently, weapons from around the world are kept in the castle.

As a mercenary of Marquis Andre. Rock participates in the siege of Ostrhinesburg Castle, defended by Sir Stefan.

Rock, whose goal is the weapons stored there, breaks into the huge castle. Mounting a furious charge against the enemy, he heads for the main tower where the weapons are stored.

"Barbarian! So the invasion has come this far!"
Suddenly, a young soldier in armor blocked Rock's way.

Siegfried
Age: 16
Born: Feb.6
Weapon:
Hard Steel Blade
Style: Own Style

A young mercenary searching for the "SoulEdge," with which to defeat his father's enemies.

Li Long
Age: 24
Born: Oct.23
Weapon: Snake Wind
Style:
Matchless Dragon

An assassin searching for the "SoulEdge" with which to hunt swordsmen.

Take down the two foes within the allotted time!

Upon defeating the mercenary castle defender Siegfried and the assassin Li Long from the East, who sought the weapons in the castle; Rock obtained the weapon "Cross Ax," just as the castle fell.

The Secret Treasury

A secret storehouse hiding the treasure of the millionaire

Vercci is located on a nameless, solitary isle. Booby-traps such as 50 m deep pits and water traps are set everywhere to repel invaders. It is an impregnable Treasure Island.

Rock proceeded to the island to find Vercci who wrote Voldo's note.

Following the instructions in the note, he avoided the booby-traps, at last arriving in the Secret Treasury at the bottom of a pit. In addition to glittering treasure was a mountain of rare weapons.

A sharp pain shot through him as a woman's voice came from behind.

"If you leave quietly, I'll spare your life."

Taki

Age: 22

Born: ?

Weapn: Kunai

Style:

Dream-slashed sword

The Underground Hunter

She, who fought Rock at the shrine in Japan, had been secretly tailing him.

Although wounded, you must defeat the enemy.

Rock defeated Taki despite his wounds. He took up the "Double Tomahawk" from the weapons storehouse.

Rock discovered a journal kept in the storehouse.

The journal contained a list of the people commissioned by Vercci, the owner of the storehouse, with the search for the "SoulEdge."

The list contained the name of the most feared pirate in history, Cervantes.

"Pirates ... "

He recalled "that night," a faint memory of which had remained in the back of his mind.

A sudden explosion, the jet black sea, the skull and crossbones flag approaching the sinking ship ... "Could it be the same pirate?"

He decided to track down Cervantes.

The Final Battle

Cervantes... the pirate who had terrorized the Atlantic. While gathering scraps of information, Rock visited the Spanish port that had been the pirate's base in search of more reliable leads

The area was quiet, with no sign of people.

As he walked around the port, Rock was overcome by a strange sensation he had not experienced before, His mind became hazy and his body naturally led him towards a certain ship

When he came to his senses, several ships rocked before him. Upon seeing a flag on one ship, Rock's eyes opened wide.

"Could it be ... THAT flag?"

Rock recalled that nightmare night he could never forget.

"Could it be, this very ship ... me, my parents ...?"

Rock climbed onto the deck. Suddenly, a voice boomed from behind, seeming to shake the ground.

"I've been waiting for you. I'll sacrifice your innocent soul to my sacred swords!"

A man grasping a strange

sword in both hands stood there. In contrast to his glittereing eyes and sword, his pallid face showed no sign of life.

"Pirates ... Cervantes ... SoulEdge!"

Rock, with a war-cry, sprung upon the man!

Cervantes de Leon
Age: 48 (immortal)
Born: Jan.1
Weapon: SoulEdge
Style: Possessed

The Immortal Pirate

This great pirate was feared by all who sailed the Atlantic. Several years ago, after stealing SoulEdge for Vercci, the Italian arms dealer, he disappeared.

Defeat the enmey!

The pirate lay dead. His parents were avenged. As his large hands grasped SoulEdge, the memory of a child terrified by the storm came vividly back.

His mother's smiling face, his father's strong arms. Warm food and a soft bed. Memories of his parents' love.

His memories melded with those of the orphan Bangoo.

Rock remembered the small hands grasping his fur sleeves, alleviating his own sadness. Through the small child, he had forgotten his own pain.

Perhaps his own parents were still alive somewhere. But Bangoo's father and mother were not.

"Bangoo!!!"

Rock chose future happiness

over past memories.

"I must look after him. I must return to Bangoo!"

Thinking of his "family," Rock started his long journey back to the New World.

=====

2.1.03 Taki

Name: Taki

Age: 22

Born: ?

Height 170 cm (5'6")

Weight: 55 kg (121 lb)

Blood Type: A

Family Structure:

Parents & Siblings (deceased)

Teacher: Taki

Weapon: Rekkimaru

Style:

Dream-slashed sword

Taki is a highly skilled ninja working as a demon hunter. As an orphan, she was brought up by a ninja master named Taki.

She is an expert spy and a great schemer in this age of the Civil War. Many military commanders employed ninjas, but Taki works for herself.

Taki does not have a base of operations for she is one of a ninja clan now living in seclusion.

Among this ninja clan, many have extraordinary abilities that have been lost or forgotten by the general population.

Having been blessed with supernatural powers, Taki chose to travel throughout Japan to conquer the evil and vindictive demons who threaten ordinary people.

Taki forged her own weapons which she did with great love

and care.

Among all her custom weapons, her favorite was "Rekkimaru" which held supernatural powers within.

However, "Rekkimaru's" power had begun to weaken and about this time, rumors concerning an "Evil Sword" began spreading from southern countries.

The seal at the shrine which confined the ancient Fury demons was weakening. Taki was called to solve this problem.

The shrine was full of evil spirits, demons, and ghosts. "Look at them all! Nothing like a good challenge."

She drew her faithful "Rekkimaru" and sliced at the demon leader.

"What's happened here?"

The demon still stood before her. After several attacks, the spirit vanished. She was extremely surprised.

"This can't be possible. I usually kill these things in one stroke!"

Her sword "Rekkimaru" was displaying an unusual loss of power.

After sealing the shrine, Taki began to think about what was happening. Something was affecting her beloved sword, but what could it be?

She knew there was no such thing in Japan.

"What of that rumor of the evil sword, 'SoulEdge'?"

"The sword must be close. There's no other explanation for this strange phenomenon."

Taki decided to investigate

this evil sword.

"If there's even the slightest chance of saving my favorite sword "Rekkimaru", I would travel the world for it."

The Shrine of Confined Demons

The Shrine of Confined Demons is surrounded by bamboo. It now contains demons and spirits sealed in by Taki.

Taki was told that her seal had broken.

"So soon?"

"It is unusual for the seal to be broken so quickly."

When she returned, Taki saw a demon different to the ones she had previously sealed away.

" ... destroy Ninja "

Taki realized that this was a man manipulated by the evil spirit which filled the shrine.

Voldo

Age: 43

Born: Aug.25

Weapon: Katar

Style: Own Style

Hell Guardian

Carrying out the will of his deceased master, Vercci, he left on a journey to find "SoulEdge."

Upon reaching the shrine, Voldo was possessed by the evil spirit, his evilness being magnified by the Fury-Demons.

There is no way of defeating him inside this shrine. Knock him out of the Ring!

After defeating the demon Voldo, Taki sealed his spirit inside her "Iron Fan."

"What the...no wonder!" Taki noticed that the "Spiritual Sword" used to seal the shrine, was missing.

"Without it, those demons will be released again. I must recover that sword."

The Pirate's Castle

The headquarters, Noto castle, belongs to Noto-Murakami and the Setonai pirates (Mouri sea force).

It is a pirate fortress that occupies the entire island. It has naval ports and serves as a sea barrier.

Taki heard of a Demon-Slaying samurai, Mitsurugi. She went after him, hoping to recover the "Spiritual Sword." She arrived at the castle.

"He must be the one!"

The samurai guarding the castle had Taki's sword at his belt.

"Who's there? Come out!" he said.

"You! Heishiro Mitsurugi!

Give me back the sword from the shrine"

Taki leapt to the attack.

Heishiro Mitsurugi

Age: 22

Born: Jun.8

Weapon: Korefuji

Style: Mitsurugi

The Lone Swordsman

He is a great samurai with a taste for collecting swords. While planning a worldwide search for "SoulEdge," Mitsurugi was hired to guard the castle in exchange for using Noto's ship.

Defeat the enemy within the time allowed.

Taki defeated Mitsurugi and repossessed her sword. The other guards chased her but she eluded them and returned to the empty castle where she took "Mekkimaru," the treasure sword with power to break evil spirits.

She returned to the shrine and re-sealed it, then headed off to find information on the evil sword.

The Narrow Gorge

The deep and narrow gorge called "San Kyo" is located in the middle reaches of Yangtze River, one of the great rivers of China.

Arriving on the continent, Taki heard further rumors of "SoulEdge."

Traveling down the river on a raft, surrounded by sheer cliffs, she heard a man's voice echoing in the deep fog.

"You! I heard you're looking for 'SoulEdge.'"

The next opponent, a man with a fearsome smile and strange looking weapon jumped on the raft.

"Sorry, but I must find that sword first!"

Li Long
Age: 24
Born: Oct.23
Weapon:
Snake Wind
Style:
Matchless Dragon

Rage of the Executor

He is a royal assassin who was sent to Japan. He returned only to find his lover, Chie, murdered. He searches for "SoulEdge"

hoping it will lead him to her killer.

Defeat the enemy using the Throw technique.

Taki defeated the skillful Li Long in battle.

"Chie---Chie---."

Li Long uttered as he threw himself into the river and disappeared. "A very skilled opponent. I guess he was more than just a thief."

Taki continued her journey to find evil sword.

The Fighting Arena

This is a secret fighting arena attracting strong men from all over the world.

Taki arrived here during her journey and entered the contest.

Gain victory over every opponent!

Heishiro Mitsurugi

Age: 22

Born: Jun.8

Weapon: Iron Slasher

Style: Mitsurugi

Seung Mi Na

Age: 16

Born: Nov.3

Weapon Zanbatoh

Style:

Seung's long blade

Hwang Sung Kyung

Age: 25

Born: Aug.8

Weapon:

Mountain Breaker

Style:

Seung's long blade

More opponents to be announced.

First match :

Heishiro Mitsurugi

Second match :

Seung Mi Na

Third match :

Hwang Sung Kyung

Forth match :

Voldo

Despite the odds, Taki
defeated all the swordsmen
and won the weapon "Jutte."

Eurydice Shrine

It is said that this temple
was built by the God of Forge,
Hephaestus himself.

There is a rumor that a girl
who received a revelation at a
forest lake was given a "Divine
Weapon" in this temple.

The temple was tranquil
inside. In the center of
the stage, there was a girl
praying to the heavens.
Taki tried to sneak up on
her without being noticed,
but the girl caught her.

"You too are searching for
"SoulEdge," aren't you?"

"What if I am?" Taki replied.

"If you want it, you must
challenge me first."

The girl turned around
and her sword radiated
with powerful rays of light.

Sophitia Alexandra

Age: 18

Born: Mar.12

Weapon: Gaea Sword

Style: Athena

Emotional Goddess

Sophitia is the girl who
received the divine revelation
from the God of Forge. She
prevents misfortune caused by
the evil sword, and has
received her own sword and
shield tempered by the god
himself for the very
destruction of this evil

thing.

Defeat the enemy using
the CriticalEdge technique!

Taki defeated both Sophitia
and her double.

As taki picked up Sophitia's
"Gaea Sword", she felt the will
of the God of Forge.

"Destroy 'SoulEdge!'"

A voice said.

Attack on Ostrhinesburg Castle

This is the castle where the
knight Stefan, who has been at
war against Marquis Andre
resides. He had bragged of
his invincibility but is now
suffereing defeat from the
enemy's cannon attack.

It is siad that he has
collected weaponry from all
over the world.

As the cannons continued
their bombardment, Taki
snuck into the enormous
Ostrhinesburg castle.

But, a young swordsman
holding a huge sword blocked
her way from the main tower.

"No one is allowed past this
point!" the knight said.

"I have no time to play with
a kid like you." Taki
remarked.

"Why you impetuous female...!"

Siegfried

Schtauffen

Age: 16

Born: Feb.6

Weapon: Flamberge

Style: Own Style

Innocent Darkside

He is a young mercenary who
participates in one war after
another. He too seeks

"SoulEdge" hoping to avenging his father's death. He is currently the mercenary captain guarding the castle.

The castle will fall tonight. Defeat the enemy before sunset.

After defeating the young Siegfried, Taki discovered a weapon traditionally used by the ninja called "Kunai."

The Money Pit

In an isolated island, there is a secret storage place where the millionaire Vercci keeps his fortune. It has a 50 meter deep pit and some under water traps for preventing invasions. This is indeed an impregnable treasure island.

Knowing of the island from Voldo, Taki landed on shore and penetrated the secret storage place.

She was attacked from the behind and injured. Gradually she felt her body grow numb.

"What's happening to me?" she cried.

"Time for you to take a nap."

There, stood a familiar man.

Li Long

Age: 24

Born: Oct.23

Weapon:

Snake Wind

Style:

Matchless Dragon

Rage of the Executor

After his humiliating defeat by Taki on the Yangtze river, Li Long has thought of nothing but revenge, trailing her here even past all of the perilous traps!

Defeat the enemy before the poison takes full effect!

Li Long's attack was more furious ever. Though poisoned, Taki still won with her awesome skills.

Taki found and took the antidote. She searched for "SoulEdge," but found the weaon "Tanto" instead. The, she left the accursed island.

The New continent

In a savanna in North America, there is a huge crater with a forest of giant stones in the center. The natives called it "sacred," but were afraid to visit the place.

Taki had heard of the story of the pirate who some thirty years ago found "SoulEdge" off the coast of the New World.

To find out the truth, she sailed across the Atlantic and arrived on the continent.

After wandering about, Taki encountered a man. He reacted violently when she uttered the word, "SoulEdge?"

"--SoulEdge!!"

The man suddenly attacked Taki!

Rock

Age: 35

Born: Dec.14

Weapon: Stone Club

Style: Own Style

The Reckless Commando

An orphan, wandering around the new continent, Rock learned skills for survival in the wild. Rock is looking for "SoulEdge," the key to regaining his lost memory.

The enemy's strength is miraculous. Knock him out of the ring to win

Taki used her ninja skills to knock the giant Rock off the cliff.

After talking with the locals, Taki found that the pirate had not been seen on land. She started back for Europe.

The Final Battle

Not finding him in the New World, Taki decide to investigate Cervantes' Spanish port base.

Taki had never seen "Rekkimaru" had been growing more and more fragile.

"This time I must be close!"

After searching the port, Taki saw a man holding two swords on the deck of an anchored ship.

"You've finally found me! I'll take your sword's power and your soul!"

Cervantes de Leon
Age: 48 (immortal)
Born: Jan.1
Weapon: SoulEdge
Style: Possessed

The Immortal Pirate

He was the pirate once feared by all shipping on the entire Atlantic Ocean. He has not been seen since he uner took a mission to find "SoulEdge" on the order of Vercci, the Italian weapons merchant.

This was the cause of the disturbance. "This man, Cervantes, doesn;t look alive.

What an awful smell! If he is not a mortal man, the what is he?"

Defeat the enemy!

Her sword, "Rekkimaru", which she created and

dedicated her life to,
shattered into pieces!
Not even a powerful
enemy like a Fury-Demon was
that strong.

The demons rejoiced
at the destruction of
Taki's sword and swarmed
after her to avenge
their humiliation at
her hands. Taki grabbed
"SoulEdge" and with a
simple wave, the demons
quickly disappeared.

"Now this could be useful!"

Taki realized that she held
a powerful weapon. But to
wield great power requires
control, lest she become like
Cervantes. Within a half year,
she was able to forge the
weapon into an obedient
servant, melding it with her
beloved "Rekkimaru".

Not long after, the ultimate
challenge arose as the
Fury-Demons once again tried
to come forth into the mortal's
world.

Taki, with new weapon in
hand, met them in combat and
destroyed the demons once and
for all!

=====
=====

2.1.04 Sophitia

Name:

Sophitia Alexandra

Age: 18

Born: Mar.12

Height: 168 cm (5'5")

Weight: She would not tell us.

Blood Type: B

Family Background:

Father Ataros, Mother Niek,

Sister Kathandra, Brother

Ruches

Weapon: Omega Sword

Style: Athena

Greece, the birthplace of Cretaceous culture. The people's beliefs are starting to change to the new ways, but the ancient Gods live on in their arts and mythologies.

Sophitia is a tidy girl who works in a small bakery in Athens. She cherishes the mythical world of her ancestors.

She often prayed to the goddess Pallas Athena, guardian of her town and embodiment of wisdom and prudent warfare. Her prayer have not been ignored.

One morning, as she bathed in a forest spring, a dazzling light shined in front of her. The light formed the shape of a man.

As she stood amazed by the sight, the man told her that he was Hephaestus, the god of Forge. One of the twelve Olympian Gods.

" I'm only a mere mortal. What can I do for you? "

" Do not fear. I only want you to receive my oracle."

"Among all the weapons that mankind has created, one sword has grabbed the attention of the gods. The sword is true evil. It was forged blindly and now sucks up the hatred and pain of its victims. Many 'deceived' seek this wicked weapon."

"If any of them find it, disaster will surely follow. I will not let a creation of the forge such as this ruin my reputation. I want you to find that wicked sword before anybody else and destroy it."

The importance of this task was clear and she desired to undertake it, but still she was filled with self-doubt.

"But I'm just a mere mortal.
Can I fulfill such a big task?"

"You are not as weak as you
think. Obtain a mighty weapon
and you can save your kind. I
have heard of you from Pallas
Athena. She says you still
believe in the Olympians.
That's why I chose you. No
other except you can hear our
oracles anymore."

" Do not worry. Come to my
temple. I will grant you the
best arms and Athena will
always be with you."

Hephaestus then left. Silence
returned to the spring.

Sophitia went home and
equipped herself for the
journey. She left home before
the rosy-fingereddawn arose.
May she have the protection of
the Goddess of Victory, Nike.

Eurydice Shrine

This temple was designed and
constructed by the god of
Forge, Hephaestus, one of
twelve Olympian Gods. It
recently lay in ruin, but due
to the power of Sophitia's
faith it has been restored to
its former glory.

Sophitia arrived at the temple
and received the blessed sword
and shield from the god of
metalworking.

"Survive your first trial!"

The voice echoed in the temple.
Lightning flashed and another
Sophitia appeared before her!

Simulacrum Sophitia
Weapn: Omega Sword
Style: Athena

She is a duplicate of Sophitia
created by the god of Forge,
Hephaestus to test her.

She looks just like Sophitia

down to the armor she wears,
but Hephaestus controls her.

Defeat her!

Sophitia overcame the god's
trial.

"Well done, Sophitia."

"You eill travel the world
and waken the deceived with
your sword. Good luck..."

She realized she had been
transported to a new and
strange land...

Unknown Land

A svanna in North America.
In the middle of a gigantic
crater, a mysterious group of
megaliths lie.

The natives fear the area,
so nobody comes here. Is it a
site of power?

In this strange place Sophitia
met a man. He gazed at her sword
and shield and then raised his
large ax.

"Put down your weapons!"

At the that momen, she heard
Hephaestus' voice. "Beat him!"

"Yes, Hephaestus..."

Rock

Age: 35

Born: Dec.14

Weapon: Battle Ax

Style: Own Style

A Reckless Commando

He was orphaned while a
child. He wandered about the
New World and acquired the
skills to survive in the
wild. He met a foreign female
swordsman and challenged her
to a fight for her beautiful
weapons.

He has amazing stamina.
Knock him out of the ring!

Sophitia knocked Rock off the megalith. The big man fainted away.

The God spoke again.

"Sophitia, you are getting better. I shall give you this..."

He gave her the "Gaea Sword" which provides protection from the goddess of the earth. She headed West...

The Shrine of Confined Demons

This shrine is surrounded by bamboo. It used to hold in "Fury-Demons." There was once a ring of protection around this place but it has since been broken. These Demons now prey on passing travellers.

Sophitia came to this shrine on Omi Isle to suppress the evil that lives here.

As she approached the shrine, a foul creature materialized before her. It breathed heavily and reeked of evil.

"Gods, please protect me."

Voldo

Age: 43

Born: Aug.25

Weapon: Full Moon

Style: Own Style

Hell Guardian

To fulfill his dead master Vercci's will, he searched for "SoulEdge. As he approached the shrins, he was possessed by a Fury-Demon and has now become one.

He has incredible recovery power. Beat him with constant attacks.

As Sophitia beat Voldo, he was freed from the spell. She gave Voldo's evil weapon to Hephaestus. As a reward, he gave her the "Sword Breaker."

Ancient Temple

Mount Chii towers over the southern edge of the Korean Peninsula. There is a historic temple at the foot of the mountain.

It is said that the temple was built in the fourth century. The stage in front of this temple is used for training by the students at Seung's school.

A girl called out to Sophitia.

"You're not from these parts, are you? I see you also carry a sword. Can you use it?"

The girl challenged her to a fight with a long sword.

"Is this a trial?"

But the Gods did not answer her.

"I don't wish to fight without a reason."

Seung Mi Na

Age: 16

Born: Nov.3

Weapon: Tiger Fang

Style:

Seung's long blade

"Heart & Soul" girl

She is the only daughter of the martial art school teacher and a master swordsman. She has been in a foul mood since she was rejected from the coastal defense force and will challenge anyone in a fight.

Survive her attack within the time limit.

Though Sophitia was puzzled by this sudden challenge, she engaged Seung Mi Na. Then...

" Mi Na! Stop that!"

"Uh-oh. That's my father. Now I'm in real trouble!"

Mi Na turned and ran away from Sophitia. She shouted back as she ran.

"I'll let you go this time!"

Surprised, Sophitia watched her leave.

The Desert

There is a desert in the central Asia. It's the hardest part for the travellers who are crossing the continent overland. Nothing but the ruins of an ancient Chinese fortresses lay in the sand.

"Bandits?"

Sophitia entered the ruins of the fortress. She felt that someone was sneaking up to her, so she looked back. "Who are you?" "Give me back the shrine's sword." The stranger said. "What are you talking about?"

Sophitia was confused as the stranger pounced upon her without mercy. "It seem there's no way to avoid this fight, is there?"

Taki

Age: 22

Born: ?

Weapon: Rekkimaru

Style:

Demon-slashed sword

The Underground Hunter

She is a ninja who kills demons for a living. She came to this land following Sophitia to retrieve ther weapon taken away from the shrine. (The sword she gave to Hephaestus.)

Due to the hard trek across the desert. Sophitia is exhausted. Beat Taki with what little energy you have.

Sophitia repulsed Taki. She took the "Fire Blade" that the ninja dropped as she ran away.

Colosseum

There is a secret colosseum where fierce warriors gather from all over the world. Sophitia arrived at the colosseum in time for the contest. "Prove yourself and win the prize." The God told her.

Defeat all three fighters.

Heishiro Mitsurugi

Age: 22

Born: Jun.8

Weapon: Water Moon

Style: Mitsurugi

Seung Mi Na

Age: 16

Born: Nov.3

Weapon: Morning Star

Style:

Seung's long blade

Hwang Sung Kyung

Age: 25

Born: Aug.8

Weapon: Falchion

Style:

Seung's long blade

In mortal combat, Sophitia defeated the following three fighters.

First match

Japanese Samurai,
Heishiro Mitsurugi

Second match

Tomboy, Seung Mi Na

Third match

Hwang Sung Kyung, who's
trained in the same fighting
style as Mi Na.

Sophitia got the "Blue
Crystal Rod" as a prize.

The Secret Treasury

The secret treasury that hides the Italian Verucci's treasures. It was built on the unknown isolated island at the bottom of a huge pit, 50m deep. It is truly an impregnable

"Treasure Island."

Sophitia avoided the pit's traps and arrived at the secret treasury. Something poked her from behind.

"Eeek!"

"Hi, long time no see."

Taki, the Japanese Ninja stood behind her.

Sophitia realized she had been poisoned as the strength left her body. Taki leapt at her with an unknown weapon.

Taki

Age: 22

Born: ?

Weapon: Jutte

Style:

Dream Slashed sword

The Underground Hunter

She is looking for the "evil sword" in order to strengthen her own beloved sword. She still believes Sophitia has the evil sword from Japan.

Sophitia is poisoned.
Overcome this condition
and beat her.

Sophitia defeated Taki once again. The Ninja fled in shame, leaving Sophitia alone.

She took the "Rapier" from the treasury.

The Capture of Ostrhinesburg Castle

Sir Stefan is at war with the Marquis Andre. His "invulnerable" castle is suffering heavy damage under the Marquis' modern cannonade.

"There is a young man here who has a deep attachment to the wicked sword. Save him from being pulled into the

dark side."

Sophitia was led to the castle by the god's voice, where she found Siegfried, a young swordsman...

"Listen to me! You are under the wicked sword's control. I can wake you!"

"Maybe I don't want to wake up!"

Siegfried

Schtauffen

Age: 16

Born: Feb.6

Weapon: Faust

Style: Own Style

Innocent Darkside

He is looking for the invincible sword "SoulEdge" in order to avenge his father's death. Presently he is the chief mercenary of the castle guards.

Wake him up with a throw.

"Huh, what? ...Fa..father..."

Siegfried's addled mind cleared as Sophitia freed him from the dark side.

She received the "Apollo Sword" that grants protection from the sun god.

Decisive Battle

Sophitia tracked down the location of the wicked sword "SoulEdge." This Spanish port is home to the pirate Cervantes. Ominous silence reigned all around. The pirate ship, Adrian, lies anchored nearby.

Cervantes de Leon

Age: 48 (immortal)

Born: Jan.1

Weapon: SoulEdge

Style: possessed

The Immortal Pirate

Once he was the most feared pirate on the Atlantic. Several decades ago, he set off towards the New World in search of "SoulEdge" as requested by Vercci the Italian arms merchant.

A foul smell hangs in the air. A thirst for blood can be felt here.

"It's here as I thought. I must be right."

Sophitia felt an evil presence emanating from the Adrian.

She trusted the gods' protection and climbed aboard the ship. A strange man holding two gleaming swords waited for her on deck.

"The 'SoulEdge!'"

"I have been awaiting you. You are the girl who received the oracle. I can't wait to feast on your pure soul!"

Beat Cervantes and destroy the wicked sword SoulEdge!

"Hephaestus!!!"

Sophitia yelled and lifted up her Omega Sword high.

At that moment, a dazzling light encircled her and a thunderbolt shattered the wicked sword "SoulEdge" into pieces.

From the light, she could hear the voice of Hephaestus.

"Thank you for destroying the evil swords."

As the light around her diminished, her armor, shield and sword shrank to the size of her palm.

Then, to the amazed Sophitia the twelve Gods appeared before

her and thanked her for her courage. Hephaestus smiled and they all vanished.

How long has passed since then?
Sophitia now bakes bread with her sisters. The past seems like a dream.

But, she can still feel the loving eyes of ancient gods upon her.

=====

2.1.05 Mitsurugi

Name:

Heishiro Mitsurugi

Age: 22

Born: Jun.8

Height: 168 cm (5'7")

Weight: 59 kg (130 lb)

Blood Type: AB

Family: All deceased.

(Natural causes)

Weapon: Korfuji

Style: Mitsurugi

This young Samurai known as "The Guardian in this age of civil war." He is also called "The Great Swordsman." Although he is feared for his fierce fighting, he was born a farmer's son in Bizen.

The strong young boy enjoyed farming, however after many years of seeing his beloved farm ravaged by war, he became angered and discouraged. "It's better to raid than to be raided." He said.

In the winter of his 14th year, He threw down the hoe and took up the sword. Studying swordsmanship under a powerful clan-lord, he was eventually hired as a "mercenary for the advent of war." It was then when he took the name "Mitsurugi."

His original fighting style

and tremendously powerful attacks during battle made him quite feared. "He has been known to mow through foes as if they were like a field of wheat." Some say.

He has a spectacular battle-field record with several commendations to the rank of officer.

Having rejected his military commissions, Mitsurugi's only desire is that of a worthy adversary.

Mitsurugi eventually leaves the Urakami Clan, much to their regret, to pursue a career as a freelance mercenary. He fights in every war in the land, thus earning his nickname "The Guardian in an age of civil war."

It is during this time that he hears of a new weapon "Tanegashima" - a matchlock rifle.

"What is this? A firearm? It cannot be so powerful. It looks like a pipe!" Mitsurugi stared in disbelief.

However, even the mighty Takeda cavalry was wiped out by this weapon.

For Mitsurugi, who has fought with a single sword, this is an urgent matter. "If this weapon is allowed in the world, wars will not be won by the strong and I will lose my job as a mercenary!"

"I must find a weapon stronger than that rifle!"

A rumor about the legendary sword "SoulEdge" reaches his ears.

"That's it. This weapon can overpower the fire arm."

Without a second thought, Mitsurugi starts his search to

find the blade. "Somewhere in the world, this "SoulEdge" exists!"

The Shrine of Confined Demons

In Oni, surrounded by bamboo, lies a haunted temple, inhabited by a horrible demon.

"A demon. How interesting..."

Upon hearing this tale, Mitsurugi heads for the shrine...

Rock

Age: 35

Born: Dec.14

Weapon: Crescent Ax

Style: Own Style

A Reckless Commando

As an orphan on the new continent, he learned his skills for survival in the wild.

He was possessed by an evil spirit upon entering the shrine and has now become a demon himself!

Fight all who enter the shrine!

Mitsurugi defeats the possessed Rock as well as his malevolent doppelganger. "I thought one demon was bad enough!"

After the battle, Mitsurugi finds a sword lying on the stone floor. "Could this be SoulEdge?"

Mitsurugi picks up "Onimaru", the life drinker, which can absorb the vitality of its owner and convert it to attacking power.

The Pirate Fortress

Noto castle is the headquarters of Noto-Murakami and the Setonnai pirates. (also known as the Mouri sea force)

The fortress occupies the entire island. Naval ports act as a sea barrier and provide supplies for their pirate ships.

Mitsurugi visits Noto castle. The chief counselor requests him to guard the castle in return for his passage to the continent.

That night, He spots a ninja creeping into the fortress. "To defeat that ninja would be quite an accomplishment!"

Sword in hand, Mitsurugi intercepts the ninja's flight through the darkness.

"Woman, give up quietly! I demand your immediate surrender!"
The woman smiles unexpectedly.
"Man, you demand too much..."

Taki
Age: 22
Born: ?
Weapon: Rekkimaru
Style:
Dream-slashed sword

The Underground Hunter

Taki is a ninja whose specialty is demon hunting. She trailed Mitsurugi to the castle to retrieve "Onimaru" which he had taken from the shrine.

Act quickly, for you only have a limited time to defeat your enemy!

Mitsurugi defeats the ninja, Taki, The chief counselor recognizes this great deed and gives him the sword "Iron Slasher" as a reward.

A few days later, Mitsurugi took a sea force ship to the continent.

The old temple

At the southern tip of the

Korean Peninsula, a historic temple rests at the foot of Mount Chii, It was originally constructed in the 4th century but has been rebuilt several times.

It is here that Mitsurugi was challenged by a girl with a large weapon.

Seung Mi Na
Age: 16
Born: Nov.3rd
Weapon: Naganaki
Style:
Seung's long blade

"Heart and Soul" Girl

She is the daughter of a martial arts master and an expert swordsman. Ever since she was refused by the coastal defense force because of her gender, she has been wasting her days in frustration and has taken to challenging any swordsman she encounters.

Use a throw technique to defeat her!

"You are a good fighter, but you waste my time!"

Using a variety of techniques, Mitsurugi defeats MiNA. He quickly leaves while she is still stunned.

Along his journey, Mitsurugi hears an intriguing rumor. A swordsman named Hwang is searching for a weapon called the "Patriot Sword."

"Could this be SoulEdge?"

The Narrow Gorge

Along China's Yangtze river is the San Kyo, a deep gorge. A canal flows through this gorge providing a means of transportation for travellers.

As he travels down the canal on a raft, Mitsurugi is suddenly attacked by a stranger,

his fellow traveller.

"I will kill you, Heishiro Mitsurugi!" shouts the man!

The man brandishes a strange weapon and leaps to the attack!

Mitsurugi avoids what would be a fatal blow, only receiving a small scratch. Suddenly, his limbs grow heavy.

"What!? Am I poisoned?"

Li Long

Age: 24

Born: Oct.23

Weapon:

Snake Wind

Style:

Matchless Dragon

The Rage of the Executor

Li is an assassin sent from Ming to Japan. He returned to his home to find his love Chie, murdered at the hand of Mitsurugi. He tracked down Mitsurugi and waited for the right time to strike.

Defeat him before the poison takes effect.

Li Long is defeated after a bitter fight. Uttering his last words "Chi....Chie!"

He flings himself into the river and disappears.

"How is it my name is already known in this country? And who is Chie?"

Mitsurugi recalled all the people who held a grudge against him. Surprised to find there were so many, he stopped counting. "I can't help it if I fight to win!"

Upon searching Li Long's possessions, Mitsurugi finds an antidote for the poison and the legendary "Kojiro's Sword."

The Desert

There is a vast desert in central Asia. This is the most dangerous part of the overland passage.

"Huh? Who is that?"

Mitsurugi spots a swordsman up ahead. Hwang waits for him in the ruins of the ancient fortress.

Knowing Mitsurugi is trailing him, Hwang decides to set up an ambush.

"Hey you!" says Hwang.

"What do you want from me?"

"Uh...Um..." At a loss of words, Mitsurugi draws his sword to fight!

Hwang Sung Kyung

Age: 25

Born: Aug.8th

Weapon:

Mountain Breaker

Style:

Seung's long blade

The Hero in a warlike age

Hwang has been ordered to find the "Patriot Sword" to rescue his homeland.

He had already thwarted other attempts to stop his quest for the sword.

Strike Hwang while in the air to defeat him.

The two fought even though they were exhausted from travel. Mitsurugi, with a surprising burst of energy, leapt into the air, struck and defeated Hwang.

Mitsurugi steals a map showing the way to Western world from Hwang, who lies unconscious.

The Fighting Arena

The secret arena attracts

fighters from all over the world. The victor receives a valuable weapon as a reward.

Mitsurugi arrives at the arena with the help of the stolen map.

Defeat every opponent you encounter!

Rock

Age: 35

Weapon: Twin Ax

Style: Own Style

Sophitia

Alexandra

18 years old

Weapon: Rapier

Style: Athena

Seung Mi Na

Age: 16

Weapon: Naganaki

Style:

Seung's long blade

More opponents to be announced.

Mitsurugi defeated all five challengers at the arena.

As his reward, he was given the supernatural sword "Water Moon".

"Water Moon" shines with a strange blue light and contained the magical power to protect its owner.

Attack on Ostrhinesburg Castle

The castle of the Knight Stefan is said to contain weapons from all over the world. His claims of invincibility are being hard pressed as he vainly defends against a seige by Marquis Andre and his powerfull cannons.

Mitsurugi joined the Marquis' forces as a mercenary warrior. Sensing the castle's imminent fall, he decides to leave the campaign.

Under the cover of cannon fire and amidst the confusion, Mitsurugi decides to search the castle for "SoulEdge."

Siegfried

Schtauffen

Age: 16

Born: Feb.6th

Weapon: Flamberge

Style: Own Style

Innocent Darkside

He is a young mercenary who wanders from one battle to the next seeking out "SoulEdge," hoping to avenge his father's death.

As a mercenary captain, He guards Stefan's castle.

The castle will soon fall.
Defeat the enemy within the time allowed.

Mitsurugi defeated the young mercenary, Siegfried.

"Yu have great skill, but cannot close in to finsih.

Your concentration is weak."

"Stop talking and just finish me off!" Siegfried growled.

"Don't have time for that now!" said Mitsurugi.

He ventured into the castle to seize the "Two Handed Sword."

The Secret Treasury

This secret money pit is where the millionaire Vercci stores his fortune. Lying at the bottom of a 50 meter pit on a desert island surrounded by deadly rip-tides, this treasure island is indeed impregnable.

Voldo

Age: 43

Born: Aug.25

Weapon: Guillotine

Style: Own Style

The Hell Guardian

Carrying out the will of his long-dead master, Vercci,

Voldo has been guarding the treasure vault for most of his life. His sight and mind have deteriorated in the dark money pit.

However, that does not seem to have dulled Voldo's talent for killing, for no intruder has ever escaped alive!

Defeat him by using the CriticalEdge!

Mitsurugi was almost overcome by the superhuman Voldo, but persevered with a relentless attack. "Hmm. They don't seem to have the weapon I seek."

As Mitsurugi was leaving he spotted an aged parchment. "This is curious..." The note to Vercci told that the pirate had captured "SoulEdge" and held it in his possession. "This is it!" yelled Mitsurugi with joy.

Mitsurugi left the island with the weapon "Falx" and the letter revealing the location of the pirate and "SoulEdge".

The Final Battle

Following the letter, Mitsurugi arrived at the Spanish base of the pirate Cervantes. Cervantes' ship, Adrian, lay anchored in port.

Despite his growing excitement, Mitsurugi could not help but feel the menacing atmosphere of the desolate Spanish port.

"I have a strange feeling. This must be the place."

Mitsurugi sneaked aboard the Adrian. The pirate ship reeked of blood. Sensing someone behind him, Mitsurugi turned around...

There stood a man holding two swords that pulsed as if

alive. "Ahhhh. I have been waiting for you. I want you hot soul for my blades."

"And I have waited long enough for those hot blades. " said Mitsurugi. "I will take them now!"

"Just try boy!" Cervantes said.

The man's eyes flared with a strange blue light and with a roaring sound, his two evil swords flew to attack Mitsurugi!

"What evil magic is this!?"

Cervantes de Leon
Age: 48 (immortal)
Born: Jan.1
Weapon: SoulEdge
Style: Possessed

The Immortal Pirate

He was the pirate once feared by all who sailed the Atlantic. Dozens of years ago, he disappeared while searching for "SoulEdge" for Vercci, the Italian weapons merchant.

Defeat the enemy!

Even the fearsome pirate was not able to defeat Mitsurugi. He thought his long journey had finally ended here. But...

Once he held the swords, he knew something was not right,

"These are indeed powerful swords, but they are evil."

Long seconds passed...

Then he cast "SoulEdge" away without further hesitation. Turning himself from the evil swords, he sighed in frustration.

"This is not what I wanted. Never..."

He realized that "SoulEdge"
was pure evil, not the
weapons of legend.

"I would refuse them even if
given to me!"

The end of the civil war...

As the smoke of gunpowder
cleared over the battlefield,
Mitsurugi stood alone with
fresh determination.

His journey to find a weapon
which can overpower the rifle
continues...

=====
=====

2.1.06 Siegfried

Name:

Siegfried

Schtauffen

Age: 16

Born: Feb.6

Height: 157 cm. (5'1")

Weight: 48 kg (105 lb)

Blood Type: A

Family:

Margaret (Mother)

Frederick (Father, murdered)

Weapon:

Zweihander "Faust"

Style: Own Style

He is the young commander of
mercenary knights, who seeks
an invincible sword in order
to avenge the murder of his
father. He has yet to find
the murderer or the weapons,
"SoulEdge."

"I must find the sword and
have my revenge... I must..."

In Germany, the oppressed
peasants revolted against the
Holy Roman Empire. With its
forces weakened by the Italian
Wars, the German peasants
finally had a fighting chance.

One of their champions was

Sir Frederick, a brave knight. While on campaign, Frederick met the lovely Margaret and spent the night in her arms.

After nine months of battle, Frederick returned to find that Margaret had given him a son.

Frederick realized his love for Margaret and named his son Siegfried, after the famous hero.

Several years passed. His father, known as the "gentle knight," taught his son swordsmanship. He embarked upon a foreign crusade, promising his return to Margaret.

Young Siegfried, without his father's gentle hand to guide him, fell into bad company.

He banded together with a group of outlaws and started committing crimes.

His strength grew and soon he led a feared group of thieves known as "Schwarzwind" or Blackwind. It was then when he conceived his master plan...

"We will hunt the cowardly knights who ran away from the crusades. They carry valuable armor and loot. We'll all get rich!"

That night, as a war-weary group approached, the thieves sprang their ambush. The fatigued knights were no match for the thieves. They defeated the knights all too easily.

Siegfried killed the knight's commander himself with his proud "Zweihander."

He held the commander's decapitated head up high in triumph.

But, as the moonlight shone down, he let out a horrified

scream.

In his hand was the head of
his father, Frederick!!

The horror caused Siegfried's
mind to snap.

Yelling in grief and fear he
fled into the forest.

He plunged deeper into his
insanity, convincing himself
that someone else slew his
father. He grew determined to
find and avenge his father's
death!

Hearing about the invincible
sword, "SoulEdge," he has
come to believe that his
father's fictitious killer
can only be defeated by this
weapon.

"I can't ease my father's soul
until I find the sword and
slay his murderer!"

The Conquest of Ostrhinesburg Castle

At the castle of Sir Stefan
a battle rages.
The marquis Andre uses his
cannons to bring down the
once-invulnerable fortress.
Siegfried is the commander of
Stefan's mercenary knights.

Sir Stefan's legendary sword
was quite well known in the
region. Siegfried sought the
sword and gained employ in
order to steal Stefan's
weapon.

As the battle became fierce
and the castle was besieged,
Siegfried steeled himself
against the invaders with his
powerful sword in his hand.

Heishiro Mitsurugi

Age: 22

Born: Jun.8

Weapon: Korefuji

Style: Mitsurugi

The Lone Swordsman

A samurai who travels around the world looking for a weapon superior to firearms. He is a mercenary for Marquise Andre in the attack on Ostrhinesburg. He us after the valuable weapons which are believed to be kept inside the castle.

The enemy is as strong as the devil. Beat him!

After stopping the foreign mercenary, Siegfried entered the blazing castle.

There he killed Stefan and took his legendary sword, "Grimblade."

"This is it. With this sword, I can finally avenge my father."

After escaping from the burning castle, Siegfried rested in the forest. He gripped "Grimblade" tight in his hand and spoke.

"Sword, grant me invincible power!"

But the sword was still.

"Damn it! This is not it!"

Siegfried started feeling anxious.

"I must find the right sword.."

The image of his father's dead face floated before his haunted eyes/

He held his head and ran through the dark forest.

"Father, fatherrrr!!!"

His cries echoed into the valleys beyond.

Eurydice Shrine

This temple was supposedly built by the God Hephaestus himself. He was the creator of armor and arms.

It is said that a young girl received a revelation and was offered holy armor at this sanctuary.

Siegfried met a young girl in a Mediterranean village and was taken to the temple.

The sanctuary was tranquil. After offering prayers, the girl turned and stared at Siegfried.

"You're seeking the evil sword, aren't you? That sword is too dangerous for you. Let me help."

"I don't need your help!"

Siegfried yelled.

Sophitia

Age: 18

Born: Mar.12

Weapon: Fire Blade

Style: Athena

Emotional Goddess

This young girl received the revelation of the God Hephaestus. With her holy weapons, she is sworn to save those who foolishly seek the evil sword and destroy the wicked weapon.

Defeat all your enemies!

Siegfried defeated Sophitia and the spectral illusion.

He shouted at the sky.

"I have defeated your little girl! Now give me the invincible sword!"

But the Gods were silent.

Siegfried's voice echoed in vain.

"Why? Why?"

Burying himself deeper into insanity, Siegfried laid waste

to the sanctuary.
In the rubble. he discovered
the long "Atlas Sword" hidden
in a column.

The sky above the sanctuary
slowly covered with dark mist.
It was as if Siegfried's
insanity had attracted an evil
force.

The Arena

This is a secret arena
where strong gather from
all over the world.
The winner is awarded valuable
amrs.

Siegfried had heard warrior's
tales of this place.

At the arena's gate, a sign
was posted:

SURVIVAL CONTEST
THOSE WHO CAN DEFEAT FOUR
CONTESTANTS IN A ROW WILL
WIN VALUABLE WEAPONS

Siegfried entered the contest.

Heishiro Mitsurugi
Age: 22
Born: Jun.8
Weapon: Korefuji
Style: Mitsurugi

Rock
Age: 35
Born: Dec.14
Weapon: Cross Ax
Style: Own Style

More opponents to be
announced...

Defeat all rivals!

After a long battle,
Siegfried defeated all of his
opponents.

He won the waved sword
"Flamberge."

The Desert

A desert stretches through central Asia. It is the most difficult passage for those who travel across the continent to avoid dangerous sea routes. Ruins of an ancient fortress can be found buried in the sands. It is an extremely cruel passage.

"Who's following me?"

Although he was exhausted from crossing the dry desert, Siegfried could still sense an enemy at his back.

"Show yourself, Swinehund!"

Siegfried swung his sword as he turned. It was Rock who Siegfried had defeated at the arena.

"That prize should have been mine. Give it to me!"
Rock yelled.

"Oh, you'll get it..."

Rock

Age: 35

Born: Dec.14

Weapon:

Crescent Ax

Style: Own Style

Reckless Commando

He was orphaned as a boy. He wandered around the New World and learned means of survival in the wild. He started his journey to regain memory of his lost past. His pride would not allow him to take defeat by Siegfried to easily.

Triumph in this cruel land
that drains your strength!

Despite hunger and thirst,
Siegfried again defeated the
giant Rock and with a thrust
and delivered a mortal blow!

"Ba...Bangoo..."

The dying Rock stared at Siegfried, whispered in delirium and expired.

The Pirate Castle

Noto castle belongs to Noto-Murakami and the Setonai pirates. (Mouri sea force)
The entire island is a castle of pirates and a naval port.

Siegfried's bravery impressed the pirates and he was hired as a castle guard.

He caught a woman trying to escape from the castle. Siegfried followed the woman and confronted her.

"Surrender yourself!"

She turned slowly. Strangely enough, she smiled at him and said,

"You can't stand in my way."

She plucked the sword off her back and jumped at Siegfried.

Taki

Age: 22

Born: ?

Weapon: Rekkimaru

Style:

Dream-slashed sword

Underground Hunter

She is a ninja who exterminates ghosts. She searched for the "evil sword" in order to bolster her magic weapon, "Rekkimaru."

Defeat her before you run out of time!

As a reward for defeating the female ninja Taki, Siegfried was given the "7 Branch Sword" and passage on a Mouri vessel.

"The sword I seek isn't in this land, I will seek further..."

Siegfried's mania grew and grew...

The Valley

San Kyo is a deep valley located in the middle part of China's Yangtze River. Siegfried heard tales of a river thief who had been collecting swords. He decided to investigate.

"Give up your sword!"

A man dropped from the bridge as Siegfried's raft passed by. This man must be the thief, Siegfried thought.

"Surrender that sword! It will make a fine addition."
The man demanded.

"You will get my sword."
Siegfried grinned. "In your gullet!"

Li Long
Age: 24
Born: Oct.23
Weapon: Phoenix
Style:
Matchless Dragon

Rage of the Executor

He was an assassin for the Ming Dynasty. His life ruined after the murderer of his beloved Chie, he now steals weapons from every swordsman that travels the Yangtze River.

Defeat him by using a throwing technique!

"Chie, Chie..."

As he groaned with pain, Li Long plunged into the water and got away.

After defeating the mysterious thief Li Long, Siegfried discovered numerous stolen swords along the river, Among them was a big Chinese weapon, "HardSteel Blade."

The Secret Treasury

The wealthy and greedy Vercci hid his treasure in a vault at the bottom of a 50 m pit on an uninhabited island.

It is rumored to be impregnable.

Siegfried and his band, the BlackWind, once planned to break in to the secret vault.

The attempt failed terribly and he lost many of his men.

"Can SoulEdge really be here?"

Though wounded by the traps, Siegfried finally reached the pitch-black vault.

Voldo

Age: 43

Born: Aug.25

Weapon: Full Moon

Style: Own Style

The Hell Guardian

Guarding Vercci's treasure gives Voldo the only reason to live. Although he is blind and insane from his years in the dark pit, his assassination techniques are fearful and have killed all those who have attempted to enter the money pit.

The traps have left you weak! Fight with what strength you have left!

Siegfried defeated the guardian Voldo and demanded the "SoulEdge."

"Where is it foul beast?"

"Not ... here..." Voldo groaned.

"That's not true! Talk! Where is SoulEdge? Talk! Talk!" Siegfried shook him in rage.

But Voldo was no longer

responding.

He was already dead.

"The sword must be here.
It must be."

Siegfried thrashed the money pit in search of the legendary sword but to no avail. The sword was not there. However, Siegfried would not give up.

Among the ruin of Vercci's vault, Siegfried found a letter which named the location of "SoulEdge."

"At last. Finally I can accomplish my revenge."

He took the "Claymore" and left.

The Final Battle

Siegfried had found the whereabouts of "SoulEdge." The pirate Cervantes de Leon once used this Spanish port as a base. His ship was still anchored nearby.

Death was thick in the air.

"SoulEdge, is it here?"

Siegfried tried to control his excitement, but his body could not stop shaking as he climbed aboard the Adrian, the ship of Cervantes.

A short search turned up nothing. He heard something behind him. He turned.

"Who are you?"

"Ahhh. Such a lovely, insane soul you have. I must possess it for my own."

"What! Who on earth are you?"

There stood a man holding a pair of strange swords in his hands.

Cervantes de Leon

Age: 48 (immortal)
Born: Jan.1
Weapon: SoulEdge
Style: Possessed

The Immortal Pirate

A great pirate who was once feared by all sailors on the Atlantic Ocean.

He went missing several decades ago during the search for SoulEdge as requested by Vercci.

Defeat the enemy!

The great battle is finally over, Siegfried's destiny was right in front of him.

He grasped SoulEdge in his blood-stained hands.
An incredibly foolish act.

The history of massacre within SoulEdge traveled into Siegfried, consuming his consciousness!

Anger, sadness, agony, horror...

Siegfried's emotions were devoured by "SoulEdge."

He realized too late that the evil swords had invaded him and were using him for its own purpose.
The parasitic swords merged with him.

Siegfried screamed as his body turned as red as blood. Though, it was no longer certain he could hear his own screams.

Time has passed since then and the world had regained peace for a while.

But now, a horror appears on the cliff high above a quiet German village.

There, in the moonlight, stands a red knight clutching two evil swords...

=====

2.1.07 Seung Mina

Name:

Seung Mi Na

Age: 16

Born: Nov.3

Height: 159 cm (5'2")

Weight: 46 kg (101 lb)

Blood Type: A

Family:

Father (Seung Han Myong)

Mother (deceased)

Weapon:

Zanbatoh

Style:

Seung's Long blade

"Leave me alone Father! I am determined to find the sword."

Seung Mi Na struggled against her father's grip as she tried to leave his school at Chii mountain in Korea.

"Stupid girl! Get back inside now!"

"You treat me like a baby! I'm doing this for our country!"

Having been born into a strict family of martial arts teachers, Mi Na grew up surrounded by weapons.

She has excellent knowledge of martial arts and her horse-sword technique is superior to even her father's.

However, because of her cute looks, she had been teased by the neighborhood boys and treated like a girl.

"If you ever call me 'cutey' again, I'll beat you with something harder than this stick!"

There were a lot of beaten boys in Mi Na's neighborhood.

Her father, Hen Myong taught her to be well disciplined and always to be faithful and true.

She grew up healthy and strong.

Han Myong thought "She's strongwilled, but it's all right if she stays here and obeys me."

However, an independent girl has other thoughts on her mind.

The ever-changing political situation in Korea had become serious, too serious to be called peace.

War and invasion was avoided only by the fact that other countries were embroiled in their own problems.

However, neighboring Japan geared up for outward expansion and conquest.

In these troubled times, suppression was turned to as a means of control.

Everyone living in that difficult period knew what that meant.

"You could be next..."

In preparation for invasion from neighboring countries, the patriotic people of Korea begin to build fortresses along their shores.

Their leader is Le Shin Jin, the admiral of the coastal defense force.

Then a rumor emerges of the "Patriot Sword - SoulEdge". The rumor spreads faster than the blink of an eye and eventually reaches Mi Na's ears.

Mi Na has grown into a patriotic young maiden.

Barred from joining the coastal defense force because of her gender, she jumped at this opportunity.

"If I find this sword, I can

save my country. I must look for it!"

After packing, she set out on her journey. But her father discovered what she was up to and caught her.

"Hwang has already been sent after the sword by government order. What if the rumors are false?"

Hwang Sung Kyung was the best student and swordsman at her father's school. He had already started his search for the weapon. There was a possibility that the rumor could be another scheme, but...

Mi Na had already decided to leave. "I am sorry, father!"

The Old Temple

At the southern tip of the Korean Peninsula, a historic temple rests at the foot of Mount Chii. It was originally constructed in the 4th century but has been rebuilt several times.

Running out from her house, against her father's will, Mi Na stopped at this temple to rest. There she saw a suspicious swordsman.

This man was trailing the student Hwang, who also sought the "Patriot Sword".

"This man is very suspicious. But he may have information on the 'Patriot Sword'."

Hoping to get to the bottom of the matter, Mi Na challenged the man to a fight.

Heishiro Mitsurugi

Age: 22

Born: Jun.8

Weapon: Korefuji

Style:

Mitsurugi

The Lone Swordsman

He gained renown as a great swordsman in the "Age of Civil Wars". When he discovered the existence of firearms, he started a journey to find "SoulEdge" a weapon he hoped was greater than the power of the rifle.

Mi Na's father and students are looking for her. Defeat the enemy in the time allowed!

Mi Na overcame Mitsurugi, but before she could get information about the "Patriot Sword" from him...

"Oh! My father approaches! I can't stay here!"

Leaving Mitsurugi there, she quickly ran away.

The Shrine of the Confined Demons

The shrine on Oni Isle is surrounded by bamboo. It was built for the purpose of containing horrible Fury-demons.

It is said that in the shrine rests a weapon capable of manipulating the human spirit.

"I wonder if it could be the 'Patriot Sword'?"

Travelling to Japan, Mi Na set off for the shrine.

"There's something here."

She arrived in Oni and approached the haunted shrine. Suddenly, something burst from the shrine!

"Aaaargh!!!"

Mi Na said, "Yow! What's that?"

Rock
Age: 35

Born: Dec.14

Weapon:

Crescent Ax

Style: Own Style

Reckless Commando

As an orphan on the new continent, he learned his skills for survival in the wild. He was possessed by an evil spirit upon entering the shrine and has now become a demon himself!

Defeat the demon!

Even though the demon Rock rose to attack again and again, Mi Na was able to finally defeat him.

She retrieved the "Tiger Fang" from the shrine.

The Pirate Fortress

Noto castle is the headquarters of Noto-Murakami and the Setonai pirates.

(also known as the Mouri sea force)

The fortress occupies the entire island. Naval ports act as a sea barrier as well as keeping the pirate ships well supplied.

Mi Na planned to sneak aboard a ship and return to China.

When she reached Noto castle, she found the pirates were at sea. Seeking lodging, she snuck into the castle.

There she encountered a female Ninja.

"I want the weapon you stole from the shrine." The ninja said.

"Go away. It is mine now."

Taki

Age: 22

Born: ?

Weapon: Rekkimaru

Style:

Dream-slashed sword

Underground Hunter

Taki is a ninja whose specialty is demon hunting. She followed Mi Na to castle Noto in order to retrieve the "Tiger Fang".

Defeat her within the time allowed!

Mi Na defeated Taki after a fierce fight.

She took the "Long Handled Sword" from Noto castle's weapons store and jumped on a ship headed for China.

The Narrow Gorge

The gorge, "San Kyo" is located in the middle reaches of the Yangtze, one of the greatest rivers in China.

Mi Na boarded a raft that would take her down the Yangtze.

As her raft passed under a bridge, a man dropped down landing beside her!

"I need to take this raft. Leave your sword and get off now." The man said.

"Yeah, right!"

"Then, you leave me no choice!"

The man leapt to the attack!

Li Long

Age: 24

Born: Oct.23

Weapon: Falcon

Style:

Matchless Dragon

Rage of the Executor

Li is an assassin sent from Ming to Japan. He returned home to avenge the death of his love Chie. Since then he has attacked swordsmen on the

Yangtze, hoping to find her killer.

Use the Throw technique to defeat him!

Mi Na defeated Li Long. Realizing his mistake, he gave her the weapon "Naganaki" as an apology and left.

She continued her journey down the river after Hwang.

The desert

There is a vast desert in central Asia. This is the most dangerous part of the overland passage.

After three months of trailing Hwang, she finally caught up with him in this desolate area.

Needless to say, Hwang was surprised to see Mi Na here.

"Please go home. Your father must be worried!"

"No. I will never, never go back until I find the 'Patriot Sword'." Mi Na replied.

"You're hopeless! All right. You can come with me if you prove your fighting is superior to mine."

She smiled.

"No special treatment!"

Hwang Sung Kyung
Age: 25
Born: Aug.8
Weapon:
Thunderous Fire
Style:
Seung's long blade

The Hero in a warlike age

Hwang has been ordered to find the "Patriot Sword" for his government.

He is having a hard time convincing Mi Na, who ran away to look for him, to return home.

Disarm him to win!

"How was that?" Mi Na asked.

"How can I come with you?"

The two fought to exhaustion, but Mi Na ended up the victor.

"Continue your search." Hwang replied. "I'll rest here a while."

Eurydice Shrine

It is said that Hephaestus, the God of forge, built this temple himself. Rumor had it that a girl received a revelation from him in a nearby pool and a "Divine Weapon" in this temple.

At the temple, Mi Na heard a "Divine Voice".

"You are a strong-willed woman. Defeat her and you will receive the sword!"

As the Voice faded, a female warrior appeared in a flash of light!

Sophitia Alexandra

Age: 18

Born: Mar.12

Weapon: Fire Blade

Style: Athena

Emotional Goddess

Sophitia received the divine revelation from the God of forge, Hephaestus. She received her sword and shield from the God himself and travels the globe preventing misfortune caused by all those seduced by the evil sword.

Defeat your enemy!

Despite Sophitia's divine

powers, Mi Na won.
The Divine Spear "Halbard"
appeared before her and the
Voice spoke again.

"Take this weapon and destroy
the evil sword!"

The Capture of Ostrhinesburg Castle

The castle of the Knight
Stefan is said to contain
weapons from all over the
world.

His claims of invulnerability
are being hard pressed as he
vainly defends against a
siege by Marquis Andre and
his powerful cannons.

Mi Na arrived as the Marquis'
forces were assaulting the
castle. Fire balls streaked
through the air as she stormed
the gate.

A soldier blocked her way,
brandishing his huge sword.

"No one may pass! Not even
a little girl like you!"

Her eyes narrowed.

"Little girl? I'll show you
who's a little girl!"

Siegfried
Schtauffen

Age: 16

Born: Feb.6

Weapon: Atlas Sword

Style: Own Style

Innocent Darkside

He is a young mercenary who
wanders from one battle to the
next seeking out "SoulEdge"
intent on avenging his
father's murder.

As a mercenary captain, He
guards Stefan's castle.

The castle will soon fall.
Defeat your enemy before the
sun sets.

Mi Na defeated the young

mercenary as the castle fell.

In the chaos, she grabbed the weapon "Morning Star" and a map, then made her escape.

The Secret Treasury

This secret money pit is where the millionaire, Vercci, stores his fortune. Lying at the bottom of a 50 meter pit on a desert island surrounded by deadly rip-tides, this treasure island is indeed impregnable.

The Ostrhinesburg map pointed the way to Vercci's money pit and its treasure.

After narrowly avoiding the money pit's numerous traps, the exhausted Mi Na finally reached the vault. From its inky darkness she heard the sinister breathing of the pit's guard.

"Oh! Stay away from me!"
Mi Na cried out.

Voldo
Age: 43
Born: Aug.25
Weapon: Full Moon
Style: Own Style

The Hell Guardian

Carrying out the will of his long-dead master, Vercci, Voldo has been guarding the treasure vault for most of his life.

His sight and mind have deteriorated in the dark pit. However, that does not seem to have dulled Voldo's talent for killing, for no intruder has ever escaped alive!

With little strength left,
defeat Voldo!

Although he possessed super-human strength, Mi Na won. With a raspy death rattle, Voldo expired.
"I must get out of this awful

place!"

She happened to find a letter describing "SoulEdge's" location. Taking that and the "Sickled Spear" she left the island.

The Final Battle

Mi Na located the Spanish port that was the base of the pirate Cervantes. His ship, the Adrian, lay anchored in port. All was still.

Mi Na's heart pounded as she made her way through the desolate port. She could not stop trembling.

"What is that smell? That horrible smell?"

As Mi Na climbed aboard the Adrian, she was confronted on deck by a man. He held swords that shone eerily.

"Ahhhh. I have been waiting for you. You have guts for such a little girl." he said.

"Don't call me a little girl!"

"Such fire! Your strong spirit will feed my swords well!"

Cervantes de Leon
Age: 48 (immortal)
Born: Jan.1
Weapon: SoulEdge
Style: Possessed

The Immortal Pirate

He was the pirate once feared by all who sailed the Atlantic. Dozens of years ago, he disappeared while searching for "SoulEdge" on behalf of Vercci, the Italian weapons merchant.

Defeat the enemy!

"I did it, father!"

The evil stranger lay defeated at Mi Na's feet/
Trembling with anticipation, she reached for "SoulEdge"

"This is surely the Patriot
Sword!"

However, the swords were not
easy to lift.

She lifted the first of
"SoulEdge's" blades and
staggered under its weight.

She tried to lift the other
but fell and was caught
under them. She thought,

"Can these swords really save
my country? Look what
destruction they have caused
here. I don't want it to
happen again!"

Annoyed, she kicked the
swords away.

"Oh well."

She turned and cheerfully
left the port town.

But her cheerfulness
diminished as she reached
home.

"My father might be more
fearsome than anyone I've
met on my journey!"

As expected, her father
stood at the gate, awaiting
her. But contrary to her
fears, he greeted her with
open arms and a smile.

=====
=====

2.1.08 Li Long

Name: Li Long
Age: 34
Born: Oct.23

Height: 168 cm (5'5")
Weight: 55 kg (121 lb)
Blood Type: B
Family Structure: Parents
deceased, Mimi (sister),
Chie (Lover)
Weapon: Falcon

Style: Matchless Dragon

After the death of the great Eirakutei, the Ming Dynasty suffered plundering by Southern Japanese pirates called the "Wakou."

The emperor finally took action and sent Li Long to assassinate the leader of the pirates. The secret mission also included an order to retrieve the valiant sword, "SoulEdge."

However, the assassin, Li Long, did not care about "SoulEdge." Taking advantage of war-torn Japan, he decided to not only target the Wakou leader, but also the Daimyo feudal lords.

This action was, of course, outside the limits of his mission, but he had no doubts as to his success. His iron will would see him through.

However, man is not made of iron. His attack on the head of a powerful family in Honshu went awry, leaving him badly wounded. Fortunately for him, he was rescued by a beautiful girl named Chie.

Chie was a daughter of the innkeeper Yahei. As a child, she was traumatized by her mother's death and lost her ability to speak.

Even without words, Chie is capable of understanding people's sorrow. She devoted herself to the care of the wounded man.

Li Long gradually opened his heart to Chie and the two began to love each other. Li Long stayed with Chie even after his injuries healed.

But, destiny did not treat him kindly.

While he was away, a fight broke out at the inn. In the confusion, his lover was thought to have been killed. "Who! Who did this? Why?" The wounded Yahei told grief-stricken Li Long that a wandering swordsman had started it, then fled.

Eyewitnesses thought it might be the lone swordsman, Heishiro Mitsurugi. However, Mitsurugi was not the only swordsman wandering the land.

"When I find who did this, I will show no mercy!"

Remorse filled Li Long until he had a revelation. "I will not rest until I have hunted down every single swordsman."

Li Long discovered that Heishiro Mitsurugi was searching for "SoulEdge," and decided to follow him.

If I find "SoulEdge," first, Mitsurugi will come to me and his death. If Mitsurugi is not Chie's murderer, I'll just continue hunting criminal swordsmen. I will also have the sword for Eirakutei.

Li Long started to pack up for a journey to trace Mitsurugi hoping to take revenge for his dead lover Chie.

The Shrine of Confined Demons

This Shrine is surrounded by bamboo. It was built by people with supernatural power to seal off the "Fury-demon" inside.

Mitsurugi had plans to exterminate the demon haunting this shrine.

Li Long decided ambush Mitsurugi at the shrine. But the samurai did not appear. "Where can he be? Wait!"

Suddenly, Li Long realized he wasn't alone!
"Someone's coming. Could it be...?"

He reached for his nunchaku in anticipation.

Rock
Age: 35
Born: Dec.14
Weapon: Crescent Ax
Style: Own Style

A Reckless Commando

Rock was possessed by an evil spirit when he entered the shrine, and has now turned into a demon, attacking people indiscriminately.

Attack and defeat the supernatural foe!

Li Long defeated the demon Rock and seized his weapon.

He modified it to make a new weapon, the poisoned "Snake Wind."

The Pirate Castle

Noto castle, belongs to Noto-Murakami and the Setonai pirates (Mouri sea force) It has naval ports which supply the pirate ships between raids. Valuable weapons, stolen by the pirates, are kept inside the castle.

Mitsurugi had already left this place and has gone to the new continent.

"I have no business here anymore." Li Long said.

Li Long took the weapon "Titan" from the armory. A swordsman in a suit of armor blocked his way.

"I saw you take that! Come with me! You are under arrest!"
"Never!"

Li Long raised his weapon

and entered a fighting stance.

Siegfried

Schtauffen

Age: 16

Born: Feb.6

Weapon: Faust

Style: Own Style

Innocent Darkside

He is a young mercenary lookin to avenge his father's death. Because of his great swordsmanship, he was employed as a mercenary captain guarding the castle.

Others are coming. Defeat him within the time allowed.

Li Long quickly defeated Siegfried and with his "Titan," he left the castle and escaped his pursuers.

A few days later, Li Long boarded a ship for his home country in pursuit of Mitsurugi.

The Narrow Gorge

The gorge, "San Kyo" is located in the middle reaches of the Yangtze, one of China's great rivers.

Li Long burned with vengeful thoughts, concluding that Mitsurugi would have to pass this main section of the river on his travels.

Li Long had never seen Mitsurugi's face.

It was impossible for him to recognize the samurai. But, Li Long with his iron will had not doubts that he could find his enemy.

"I'll attack every swordsman traveling on this river!"

Seung Mi Na

Age: 16

BornL Nov.3

Weapon: Zanbatoh

Style:
Seung's long blade

Taki
Age: 22
Born: ?
Weapon: Rekkimaru
Style:
Dream-slashed sword

Sophitia
Age: 18
Born: Mar.12
Weapon: Gaea Sword
Style: Athena

Defeat every opponent!

Li Long fought several swordsmen, but Mitsurugi did not appear.

He crafted the weapons seized from swordsmen on the river and made "Phoenix," a new nunchaku with shackle attached. Frustrated by Mitsurugi's absence, he left the gorge.

The Desert

There is a desert area in central Asia. For people who travel across the continent avoiding the dangerous sea route, this desert is the most dangerous part of the overland route.

Except for the ruin of an ancient Chinese fortress, the area is barren.

"You! What do you want from me?"

The man addressed Li Long. His height and size were the same as Mitsurugi's but this was not him. He was no Japanese samurai.

"You are not who I thought you were."

Li Long readied his nunchaku and stepped closer to the man.

"But, I'm not one to turn down a challenge!"

Hwang Sung Kyung
Age: 25
Born: Aug.8
Weapon:Nippon Blade
Style:
Seung's long blade

The Hero in a Warlike Age

Hwang is the swordsman who was ordered to find the "Patriot Sword" to save his country.

Having already been ambushed and followed by bandits, Hwang was constantly vigilant.

Use an Air-Combination technique to defeat him.

Li Long defeated Hwang Sung Kyung, seized his weapon, "Steel Dragon" and a map of the world.

The Fighting Arena

This is a secret fighting arena which attracts warriors from all over the globe. "A Japanese samurai is fighting furiously at the arena."

Li Long heard this and immediately rushed to the arena.

At the arena, the following schedule was posted:

TODAY's FIGHT
SURVIVAL MATCH
WINNER RECEIVES A VALUABLE
WEAPON!

Li Long applied for the match at once.

"I will continue fighting until I defeat Mitsurugi!"

After a long fight against his lover's attacker, Li Long finally defeated Mitsurugi. He tried to find out about the

terrible incident by questioning him. "Confess! You killed the daughter of an innkeeper in Honshu!" Li Long yelled. "...you are mistaken. I would never... kill a woman."

Although Li Long wanted justice, he did not think Mitsurugi was lying. The mortal wound to Chie could not have been made by Mitsurugi's sword. "If not him, then who?"

That night, Li Long set off for "SoulEdge" taking the prize weapon "White Tiger" with him. The desire for revenge still burned in his heart.

"When I get 'SoulEdge' in my own hands..."

His anger was his only solice.

Secret Treasury

In an isolated island, there is the secret storage place where the millionaire Vercci keeps his fortune. It has a 50 meter deep pit and some under water traps to prevent against invasion. This is truly an impregnable vault.

Voldo

Age: 43

Born: Aug.25

Weapon: Guillotine

Style: Own Style

The Hell Guardian

Carrying out his dead master's wishes, Voldo has been guarding the treasure in this secret storage place. His sight and mind have deteriorated due to his prolonged seclusion in the dark pit. However, thanks to Voldo's great skill, no man has ever lived to see Vercci's treasure.

Defeat all who enter!

Taki

Age: 22

Born: ?

Weapon: Jutte

Style:

Dream-slashed sword

Underground Hunter

She is a ninja whose specialty is conquering demons. She has been looking for the evil sword hoping to strengthen her own weapon. She trailed Li Long into the vault.

In the depths of the pit, Li Long defeated the guard, Voldo, and the ninja, Taki. But, could not find "SoulEdge" among the treasures.

Taking information from Vercci's notes, Li Long seized the weapon "Asura" and left the island.

The Pirate Ship

Li Long traced the location of "SoulEdge" to a port where the pirate, Cervantes once had his base.

Li Long looked at the pirate ship, Adrian, at anchor in the port. It was a menacing place with no sign of life. "I have finally found it."

Having been unable to find his lover's attacker, Li Long's hopes were now pinned on the heroic sword, "SoulEdge."

Li Long climbed on board the Adrian. There stood a man holding two brightly glowing swords.

"Come to me! Your soul will be as sweet as that of your lover's!"

Cervantes de Leon

Age: 43 (immortal)
Born: Jan. 1
Weapon: SoulEdge
Style: Possessed

The Immortal Pirate

He was the pirate once feared by all shipping on the entire Atlantic Ocean. Dozens of years ago, he disappeared while on a mission to find "SoulEdge" as requested by Verucci, the Italian weapons merchant.

Defeat the enemy!

Falling to his knees, Li Long saw that the ground was covered in blood. Losing consciousness, he did not know whether the blood was his own or his enemy's. He began to realize that the evil man with "SoulEdge" was lying dead in front of him.

With heavy sighs, slowly he tried to reach "SoulEdge," but he was only grabbing the air.

"Chie----Chie!!!"

At a monastery in Honshu, Chie slowly opened her eyes. It was a miracle. There was a large sword scar on her back, but she was going to live!

Since Li Long left on his journey of revenge, nearly a month had passed.

Chie knew in her heart that Li Long had died. She wept for months.

Half a year later, Chie and Li Long's love was producing a new life. Dreaming about her lover, on a continent far away, Chie whispered her first words in years...

"Please Li Long, protect our child...."

=====
=====

2.1.09 Voldo

Name: Voldo

Age: 43

Born: Aug.25

Height: 183 cm (5'11")

Weight: 79 kg (173 lb)

Blood Type: A

Family: All deceased

Weapon: Katar

Style: Own Style

After the Discovery of the new world, Europ entered a new era of trade, art and wars driven by colonization and conquest.

The time was right for merchants to make a fortune.

One such Italian merchant dealt with the invincible Spanish Armada and grew rich from supplying weapons. He became known as "The Merchant of Death."

"You will bring me the legendary swords, 'SoulEdge!'"

This merchant, named Vercci, heard the whispered rumors of "an object that would satisfy every earthly desire." He started a scheme to find the mystical weapons.

Vercci's younger brothers opposed his plan. Strange how they were soon recruited into the army and out of his way. He promoted his right-hand man, Voldo, to lead the search instead.

Vercci used every means necessary to track down "SoulEdge." Mercenary armies searched the land for him, and when that didn't work, cut-throats and pirates scoured the seven seas; but to no avail...

Growing furious with his aides, Vercci decided to lead

the search himself and took his fleet to sea.

He took his fleet around the Cape of Good Hope and headed east. Along the way, he acquired rare exotic arms and riches at Eastern ports. Then, he received the news.

"No! This cannot be!"

In his homeland, war had broken out between the two great powers. "The Italian Wars."

The flames of war had finally reached the politically unstable Italy. Ironically, the target of these invaders was the "Merchant of Death" himself. To return would be suicide.

Vercci's home had been seized and destroyed. All his wealth was gone. All he had left was his fleet and their treasures. His anger turned into real madness.

"I will not lose my treasure! They'll never find it!"

Vercci and his fleet sailed to an uninhabited island. His crew dug a massive pit. A vault, guarded with deadly traps, housed Vercci's remaining treasure and weapons. Voldo then executed the crew, lest they give away the vault's location. For his loyalty, he was sealed alive inside the vault.

By the time the vault was finished and sealed, the "Italian Wars" had ceased.

But Vercci never made it back to Italy alive.

Voldo went blind and insane from his years in the pit. His only reason for being was to guard Vercci's secret treasury.

Only Voldo's talent for murder

remained keen after all those
lonely years...

The Secret Treasury

This secret money pit is
where the millionaire Vercci
stores his fortune. Lying at
the bottom of a 50 meter pit
on a desert island surrounded
by deadly rip-tides, this
treasure island is indeed
impregnable.

The ghostly voice of the
long-dead Vercci rung in
Voldo's ears.

"Voldo, protect my treasure!"

Sophitia Alexandra

Age: 18

Born: Mar.12

Weapon: Omega Sword

Style: Athena

Emotional Goddess

Sophitia received the divine
relevation from the God of
Forge, Hephaestus. She received
her sword and shield from the
God himself.

Beat her!

Voldo enjoyed slaying the
intruder Sohpitia. The voice
of his master spoke again.

"Well done, Voldo. Feel free
to use another weapon from my
treasury."

Voldo selected the razor-sharp
"Full Moon."

Recollection

Another foolhardy adventurer
made his way into the Money
Pit.

Voldo kneeld at Vercci's
throne and uttered a promise.

"Master, I will slay him."

Hwang Sung Kyung

Age: 25

Born: Aug.8
Weapon: Blue Storm
Style:
Seung's long blade

The Hero in a warlike Age

An excellent student in Seung's school, he has been commissioned by the coastal defense force to find the "Patriot Sword - SoulEdge." His travels have ended up here.

Strike him while in the air to win!

The pieces of Hwang had not cooled when the voice returned to Voldo's mind.

"S..Soul..Edge"

Even to his addled mind, these words have great meaning.

Finally, Voldo recalls Vercci's vain search for the powerful weapon.

"Bring me SoulEdge!"

"Master, I will not fail you. I will find your 'SoulEdge.'"

Recalling Vercci's information on the legendary weapons, he leaves the pit for the first time in decades in search of the swords.

Capturing Ostrhinesburg
Castle

The castle of the Knight Stefan is being hard pressed as he vainly defends against a siege by Marquis Andre and his powerful cannons.

The castle is said to contain weapons from all over the world.

Voldo carved his way through the enemy's troops as he headed for the front gate. The castle shuddered from impacting fireballs.

A young swordsman with a huge sword blocked Voldo's way to the tower.

"Monster! You may not take a step further!"

Voldo snarled and muttered.

"...Kill..."

Siegfried

Schtauffen

Age: 16

Born: Feb.6

WeaponL Faust

Style: Own Style

Innocent Darkside

Seeking revenge for his father's death, he searches for "SoulEdge." He presently is the captain of the Stefan's mercenaries.

The castle will fall soon.
Beat him within the time limit.

After a vicious battle, Voldo slew Seigfried. Stefan's armory did not hold "SoulEdge."
Voldo took the "Iron Claw" instead.

"Cervantes de Leon"

The spanish port was once flourishing but now lies quiet. Voldo remembered meeting with Cervantes, a pirate hired by Vercci to find "SoulEdge."
Maybe he had the swords.

On the foul ship, Voldo found a man with a pair of curious swords and a wicked grin. The swords glowed intensely.

"Ah, yes. Vercci. I have his swords. Too bad he is dead.
Now join him!"

"SoulEdge!" Voldo growled and sprung like a panther to the attack!

Cervantes de Leon
Age: 48 (immortal)

Born: Jan.1
Weapon: SoulEdge
Style: poossed

The Immortal Pirate

Once he was the most feared pirate on the seven seas. Upon taking up Vercci's search for "SoulEdge," he was never heard of again!

The enemy takes pride in his invincible strength. Survive his attack to win!

Voldo fought Cervantes to a stalemate.

"If I can't kiil you," the pirate said;"I will banish you to the ends of the earth!"

With a roar and a flash of light Voldo suddenly disappeared!

The Unknown Land

In a savannah in North America lies a gigantic crater. Mysterious megaliths cover the area.

The locals fear this holy area. Nobody ever comes here normally.

Voldo awoke to find himself in this strange place. Where was Cervantes?

Voldo wandered around and eventually met a small boy. The boy led him back to his home and to a big man.

"Bangoo! Stay away from him!"

The man shouted and lunged at Voldo.

Rock
Age: 35
Born: Dec.14
Weapon: Stone Club
Style: Own Style

Reckless Commando

He was orphaned as a child and grew up in the wilds of North America. Voldo's strange appearance with his adopted son Bangoo filled him with fear. He lunged instinctively.

He has amazing stamina. Beat him with a ring-out.

Rock plummeted off the edge of the megalith.

"B..Bangoo..."

Rock groaned and passed out.

"Rock!" The boy ignored Voldo as he ran to Rock's side.

Voldo left this strange land and headed east...

The Pirate Fortress

Noto castle is the headquarters of Noto-Murakami and the Setonai pirates. (also known as the Mouri sea force) The fortress occupies the entire island. Naval ports act as a sea barrier as well as keeping the pirate ships well supplied.

It is said that rare arms are collected and stored here.

Voldo arrive by trading ship and sneaked into the castle under the cover of night.

As he left the armory, he was discovered by the guard.

"Wait!" A samurai leapt out to block him.

"What kind of monster are you? I will find out with my sword!"

Heishiro Mitsurugi

Age: 22

Born: Jun.8

Weapon:

Iron Slasher

Style: Mitsurugi

The Lone Swordsman

He is a samurai who won fame as a master swordsman. He was planning on travelling overseas in search of "SoulEdge" and was working as a guard to pay for his passage.

Beat him within the time limit!

Mitsurugi suffered a defeat at the hands of Voldo.

Voldo took the "Guillotine" from the armory and left.

The Canyon

The gorge, "San Kyo" is located in the middle reaches of the Yangtze, one of the greatest rivers in China.

Voldo traveled down the Yangtze on a raft.

A man's voice echoed down.

"Surrender your raft and weapons!"

The man leapt down to the raft, he brandished a strange weapon.

Voldo almost avoided the man's attack, but its blade nicked his skin. A numbness started to spread over his body.

The man's weapon must be poisoned!

Li Long

Age: 24

Born: Oct,23

Weapon:

Snake Wind

Style:

Matchless Dragon

Rage of the Executor

Li is an assassin from the Ming Dynasty. He was on his way to Japan to kill Mitsurugi and avenge the death of his love, Chie.

Beat him before the poison
spreads!

Voldo was weakened by Li
Long's poison, but still over-
came the assassin's attack.

Defeated, Li Long gave Voldo
the antidote and the weapon
"Poison Arrow."

Colosseum

There is a secret arena
where fierce warriors gather
to battle for rare and valuable
weapons.

Voldo stumbled upon this
hidden place in his travels.

As Voldo entered the great
colosseum, his blind eyes could
not read the sign:

EVENT OF THE DAY
SURVIVAL MATCH
WINNER WILL BE AWARDED
A WEAPON!

Beat all enemies!

Voldo was victorious over
all four combatants.

The prize was the "Buffalo
Horn."

The desert

There is a desert in central
Asia. It is the hardest stretch
for travelers to cross.

Voldo stopped to rest at the
ruins of an ancient castle.

He was suddenly attacked from
behind!

"I was here first! The sword
is mine!"

Voldo reeled from the powerful
blow as he turned to face a
masked woman.

Taki
Age: 22
Born: ?
Weapon: Kunai
Style:
Dream-slashed sword

The Underground Hunter

She is a ninja who kills demons for a living. She believes her own magic sword "Rekkimaru" is being affected by the evil sword "SoulEdge." Her search brought her to these ruins.

Defeat the enemy in this desperate situation !

Against incredible odds, Voldo still managed to defeat Taki. The ruins didn't hold "SoulEdge." but Voldo found the weapon "Pata."

Voldo headed for Spain where Cervantes awaits.

Decisive Battle

Voldo, once again arrived at Cervantes' Spanish port town.

Nothing but silence greets his return.

Cervantes de Leon
Age: 48 (immortal)
Born: Jan.1
Weapon: SoulEdge
Style: Possessed

The Immortal Pirate

"Look who is back. Vercci's lap dog. Your devotion to the Death Merchant will only bring you death!"

Defeat him!

"I was looking for these. Only these were my regret." Voldo found the swords at last and knelt down slowly.

He did not remember how to express joy, but he was sure

his master would.
Holding "SoulEdge" in his
hands, he pressed the swords
to his cheek lovingly.

When Voldo returned to his
"home," he set "SoulEdge"
into the place of honor. His
master's weapon collection was
completed at last. Voldo
felt a great sense of relief

Deep underground, there is a
throne made of glittering gold
and countless gems. On this
throne, sits Voldo, obedient
to the new command of his
long-dead master.

"Guard SoulEdge until the end
of time!"

Voldo still sits...

=====
=====

2.1.10 Cervantes

Name:

Cervantes de Leon

Age: 48

Born: Jan.1

Height: 177 cm (5'9")

Weight: 80 kg (176 lb)

Blood Type: 0

Family:

The "rethen of the sea"
are his family now.

Weapon:

Wicked Sword "SoulEdge"

Style: Possessed

The mighty Spanish armada
held supremacy over the
Atlantic Ocean. But sometimes
they were not enough. That is
where the privateers came in.

Phillip Leon was one such
privateer. He commanded a
proud ship with a special
commission from the Spanish
King to loot in the name of
Spain.

He once told his son,
Cervantes:

"A sailor must always be strong and gentle."

Young Cervantes was proud of his father. He was devastated when his father died at sea. Phillip's ship had moved alongside an English ship in order to plunder it. Unbeknownst to him, it was a ruse; an English warship in disguise.

Their cannon shells shattered the Spanish galleon, wiping Captain Leon from history forever.

The young man received his father's hat, his only remains. He swore:

"This is where his allegiances to the crown have gotten him! I will be against all countries! I'll become a pirate!"

And thus, Captain Cervantes the pirate, was born. He started a reign of terror across the Atlantic in his ship, the Adrian, showing no mercy to anyone, even those in the invincible armada.

One day, a messenger of the "Merchant of Death," Vercci, entered Cervantes' haunt, an inn called the Black Tail.

He told the pirate of Vercci's search for the legendary weapons, "SoulEdge."

"This Vercci wants my aid, does he?"

The messenger promised an exceptional reward for the recovery of the swords. But the pirate did not like the idea of working for anyone. What to do?...

Cervantes finally accepted the offer as a lark. For a year, he searched for Vercci. Finally, he came across some

information.

At a secret antiques auction, an English man made a successful bid on a "strange article."

The ship carrying the man and the article was setting sail. Cervantes made plans to intercept the ship.

There was no conclusive evidence that this was "SoulEdge," but then why should a pirate pass up such an opportunity?

The sea was stormy as the Adrian set sail after the passenger ship.

"Get ready, me hearties! There she blows! Helmsman, hard to port! Ready the cannons...fire!"

The boom of cannons echoed across the stormy sea. Columns of water surrounded the passenger ship.

The Adrian came along side. Cervantes raised his cutlass, rallying his bloodthirsty pirates.

"SoulEdge is our prize! All else goes to Hades!"

Mysteriously, the pirate Cervantes has neither been seen nor heard of since...

Imitation

The Adrian, Cervantes' pirate galleon, lies anchored in a Spanish port.

The town is deserted. Nothing stirs even in the wind.

A man appears. Could he be the pirate Cervantes? Then who are you?

This is an evil place where strange things happen. Who

knows where these evil swords
will lead you?

Your double smiles.

"HE has returned. 'SoulEdge'
will at last be mine."

Bogus Cervantes

No details
are known

His mask has yet to be
uncovered. Is he a swordsman
who seeks the "SoulEdge?"

Tear this imposter apart!

The battle was short. The
wicked swords drank heavily
on the imposter's soul.
Cervantes took his "Main
Gauche" as a prize.

Eurydice Shrine

The shrine was built by
Hephaestus the God of Forge.
He was a sculptor who built
many things.

Rumor had it a young woman
who received a divine message
in a forest spring was later
given a sacred weapon here.

Cervantes entered the shrine,
feeling the vibrations from
the sacred weapon.
A Voice boomed out.

"You come to challenge me?
Fine! It shall be champion
against champion."

Lightning arced and formed
a young woman armed with the
sacred weapon.

Sophitia Alexandra
Age: 18
Born: Mar.12
Weapon: Gaea Sword
Style: Athena

Emotional Goddess

Sophitia received the divine
revelation from the God of

Forge, Hephaestus. She battles disasters caused by those who were lost to the wicked swords. Hephaestus himself made weapons to aid her in battle!

Crush all your enemies!

The woman lay crumpled at his feet.

"Ha! Is this all the mighty God can do?"

The shrine became corrupt with evil energy from the wicked sword. As a token of his victory, Cervantes took "Defender" with him.

The Desert

The desert stretches through the middle of Asia. Travelers use it to avoid the dangerous sea route, but the overland passage can be just as deadly.

Along the route lie the ruins of an ancient Chinese fortress.

In the past, the wicked sword had seen blood shed many times in this place. Cervantes was led by "SoulEdge" to this desolate wasteland.

Today, however, someone is among the ruins. The swords sing out and hunger for them!

Cervantes attacks!

Hwang Sung Kyung

Age: 25

Born: Dec.14

Weapon:

Thunderous Fire

Style:

Seung's Long Blade

He is searching for the "Patriot Sword - SoulEdge."

Seung Mi Na

Age: 16

Born: Nov.3

Weapon: Naganaki

Style:

Seung's Long Blade

She snuck away from home
to follow Hwang.

Beat them!

They were highly skilled
opponents, but still no match
for Cervantes and the magical
swords.

He too "Jirotoh" from Hwang's
body and left it cooling in
the desert sands...

The shrine of the
Confined Demons

The Shrine on Omi Isle is
surrounded by bamboo.

It was built for the purpose
of containing horrible Fury-
demons.

It is said that in the shrine
rests a weapon capable of
manipulating the human spirit.

"I feel a kindred spirit here."

"SoulEdge" tells Cervantes
as he arrives at the haunted
shrine.

A great man, who had been
touched by the evil sword,
stepped into the light, ready
to attack.

Rock

Age: 35

Born: Dec.14

Weapon:

Crescent Ax

Style: Own Style

Reckless Commando

Orphaned as a young boy,
he learned to survive in the
wilderness. His body was
possessed as he entered the
shrine for shelter. Now he
is half-man, half-demon,
attacking all who pass by.

Knock this monster out of the
ring, before your power is
drained by the Fury-demons!

The battle between the two possessed men was climatic! However, Cervantes was "one" with his swords and eventually the victor.

As he subdued Rock, the wicked sword siphoned up the evil energy swimming in the air. Rock's evil sword drained dry, leaving "Katana" behind for Cervantes.

The Canyon

The Yangtze, one of the greatest rivers in China, flows down the "San Kyo" gorge.

It serves as a watery passageway for travellers.

After wandering through the wilderness, Cervantes ended up travelling down the Yangtze. He was driven onward by the wicked swords to perform his next horrible deed.

A man on a bridge above, spied the unusual swords with desiring eyes.

"These swords. I must have them."

Li Long attacked Cervantes without realizing that he held the wicked sword "SoulEdge."

Li Long
Age: 24
Born: Oct.23
Weapon: Titan
Style:
Matchless Dragon

Rage of the Executor

Li is an assassin from the Ming Dynasty. He returned to find his love, Chie; dead; Hoping to trap her murderer, Mitsurugi, Li Long waits in ambush along the Yangtze. He cannot resist the lure of "SoulEdge."

Use a throw to defeat him!

Cervantes found li Long's nunchaku attack curious, but it was not enough of a novelty to keep him from destroying the assassin.

The "Three Bladed Edge" served as an adequate reminder of Li Long's foolish and vain attack.

Ostrhinesburg Castle

The castle of the Knight Stefan is falling as he vainly defends against a siege by Marquis Andre and his powerful cannons.

The castle is said to contain weapons from all over the world.

Cervantes cam to this land, attracted by the smell of blood and warfare. The castle was on the verge of collapse as men slew each other in combat. The fields ran red with blood. Cervantes looked truly satisfied.

He strode through the carnage to the castle's gate. A young man in armor barred his way.

"Go no further! It will mean your doom!"

Cervantes smiled...

Siegfried

Schtauffen

Age: 16

Born: Feb.6

Weapon: Flamberge

Style: Own Style

Innocent Darkside

Seeking revenge for his father's death, he searches for "SoulEdge."

He presently is the captain of the Stefan's mercenaries, Little does he know he faces the weapon that he seeks!

Defeat all enemies within

the time limit!

Cervantes felt a twinge of sympathy for the insane young man as he cut his head from off his shoulders. But it soon passed. After searching the decimated castle, he took the "Heavy Lance" with him for his growing collection.

The Secret Treasury

This secret money pit is where the millionaire Vercci stores his fortune. Lying at the bottom of a 50 meter pit on a desert island surrounded by deadly rip-tides, this treasure island is indeed impregnable.

"Vercci..." Cervantes thought about the man who led him to this fate. He decided to visit the treasury of his former employer.

The elaborate system of traps were no challenge to Cervantes as he reached the vault. Inside he heard the tortured gasps of Voldo, Vercci's loyal guardian.

Voldo

Age: 43

Born: Aug.25

Weapon:Buffalo Horn

Style: Own Style

The Hell Guardian

Carrying out the will of his long-dead master, Vercci, Voldo has been guarding the treasure vault for most of his life. His sight and mind have deteriorated in the dark pit. However, that does not seem to have dulled Voldo's talent for killing, for no intruder has ever escaped alive!

Strike him in the air to defeat him!

"Master... Vercci..."

The guardian didn't even

make a death cry as Cervantes finished him off. After a couple of moans he stopped moving completely.

The sight of dead Voldo caused Cervantes to chuckle with laughter.

"Vercci!"

He called out.

"I have the swords you and your servant have been looking for! Ha Ha Ha!"

Taking the sickle weapon, "Serpent's Tongue" with him Cervantes left the island.

Hot Soul

Cervantes returned to the Spanish port town he had loved so much. The anchored Adrian lay waiting for his return.

Evil energy filled the air but no one was around to sense it.

Cervantes had let the swords be his guide as he traveled the world. But now the wicked swords were calling him home to Spain. It looked like some hot-souled men were searching for him.

"I shall gladly take all their burning souls!"

Defeat all enemies!

"SoulEdge" took their souls, each and everyone of them, not even leaving destroyed husks behind.

Cervantes felt that he was regaining himself, the more souls he took. But he realized in horror what he had become.

"Must I follow the will of this cursed sword? No! I must finally become its master!"

Cervantes has regained

control. If he is to survive,
he must destroy the wicked
"SoulEdge" who has controlled
his body for so long!

Time and space warped as the
two met for a decisive battle!

SoulEdge

Weapon: Himself

"Ultimate Wicked Sword"

Everything about him is a
mystery.

The power of SoulEdge
manifests itself and takes
from. Do not wait long.
Your strength may not last!

Cervantes was finally freed
of the power of SoulEdge.
He was finally its master now.

"Get ready to sail me
hearties!"

He shouted!

"We shall change this world
into a hellish paradise!"

As he spoke, the skies split
open, letting in a mighty fleet
crewed by undead pirates,
ready to terrorize the world
with destruction and murder.

The fleet set sail against
a black wind filled with the
smell of death...

=====
=====

2.2 Weapon Room
2.2.01 Hwang

Blue Storm

POWER:-----
DEFENSE:-----
STRENGTH:-----
DURABILITY:-----
WEIGHT:-----
Standard weapon.

Nippon Blade

POWER:-----
DEFENSE:-----=
STRENGTH:-----=
DURABILITY:-----=
WEIGHT:-----
A strong defensive
weapon.

Mountain Breaker

POWER:-----
DEFENSE:--
STRENGTH:-
DURABILITY:-----=
WEIGHT:--
Enables very fast
attacks.

Thunderous Fire

POWER:-----
DEFENSE:-----=
STRENGTH:-----
DURABILITY:-----
WEIGHT:-----
Excellent in both
attack and defense.

Falchion

POWER:-----=
DEFENSE:-----=
STRENGTH:-----=
DURABILITY:-----=
WEIGHT:-----=
An extremely strong
defensive weapon.

Sword of Dawn

POWER:-----=
DEFENSE:-----=
STRENGTH:-
DURABILITY:-----
WEIGHT:---
Highly defensive
blade with strength
recovering effect.

Midas Blade

POWER:-----=

DEFENSE:-----
STRENGTH:-----
DURABILITY:-----
WEIGHT:-----
Extremely high
attack power.

Phantom

POWER:-----
DEFENSE:-----
STRENGTH:-
DURABILITY:-----
WEIGHT:-----
Invisible to the
naked eye.

=====

2.2.02 Rock

Battle Ax

POWER:-----
DEFENSE:-----
STRENGTH:-----
DURABILITY:-----
WEIGHT:-----
Standard weapon.

Stone Club

POWER:-----
DEFENSE:-----
STRENGTH:-----
DURABILITY:--
WEIGHT:-----
Strong weapon,
but consumes energy.

Crescent Ax

POWER:---
DEFENSE:---
STRENGTH:-
DURABILITY:-
WEIGHT:---
Strikes quickly
but consumes energy.

War Hammer

POWER:-----

DEFENSE:-
STRENGTH:=====

DURABILITY:=====

WEIGHT:=====

An enormously
powerful weapon.

Twin Ax

POWER:-----

DEFENSE:-----

STRENGTH:--

DURABILITY:---

WEIGHT:----

A stron defensive
weapon.

Cross Ax

POWER:=====

DEFENSE:-----

STRENGTH:-----

DURABILITY:=====

WEIGHT:-----

Extremely high
attack power.

Double Tomahawk

POWER:-----

DEFENSE:=====

STRENGTH:-----

DURABILITY:-----

WEIGHT:---

Excellent in speed and
defense.

Great Ax

POWER:=====

DEFENSE:----

STRENGTH:=====

DURABILITY:=====

WEIGHT:----

Immense attacking
power, and energy
reviving effect.

=====

=====

2.2.03 Taki

Rekkimaru

POWER:-----

DEFENSE:-----
STRENGTH:-----
DURABILITY:-----
WEIGHT:-----
Standard weapon.

Iron Fan

POWER:-
DEFENSE:-----=
STRENGTH:-
DURABILITY:-----
WEIGHT:--
Enables ver fast
attacks.

Mekkimaru

POWER:-----==
DEFENSE:---
STRENGTH:-----
DURABILITY:-----=
WEIGHT:-----
Strong weapon, but
consumes energy.

Jutte

POWER:---
DEFENSE:-----=
STRENGTH:-----=
DURABILITY:-----=
WEIGHT:---
Extremely good at
destroying weapons.

Gaea Sword

POWER:-----=
DEFENSE:-----
STRENGTH:-----
DURABILITY:-----=
WEIGHT:-----
Recovers energy.

Kunai

POWER:-
DEFENSE:---
STRENGTH:-
DURABILITY:--
WEIGHT:-
Enables extremely

fast attacks.

Tanto

POWER:-----=
DEFENSE:-----=
STRENGTH:-
DURABILITY:-
WEIGHT:----
Excellent in both
attack and defense.

Spirirt Blade

POWER:-----=
DEFENSE:-----=
STRENGTH:-----=
DURABILITY:-----=
WEIGHT:---
An outstanding weapon
in all aspects.

=====
=====

2.2.04 Sophitia

Omega Sword

POWER:-----
DEFENSE:-----
STRENGTH:-----
DURABILITY:-----
WEIGHT:-----
Standard weapon.

Gaea Sword

POWER:-----=
DEFENSE:-----
STRENGTH:-----
DURABILITY:-----=
WEIGHT:-----
Recovers energy.

Sword Breaker

POWER:-
DEFENSE:--
STRENGTH:-----=
DURABILITY:-----=
WEIGHT:---
Extremely good at

destroying weapons.

Fire Blade

POWER:-----==
DEFENSE:-----=
STRENGTH:-----
DURABILITY:-----
WEIGHT:---

Strong, but heath
emitting from the
sword drains strength.

Blue Crystal Rod

POWER:-
DEFENSE:-----==
STRENGTH:-
DURABILITY:----
WEIGHT:-----

Highly defensive
blade with strength
recovering effect.

Rapier

POWER:-----
DEFENSE:---
STRENGTH:--
DURABILITY:---
WEIGHT:--
1.4 times longer than
OMEGA SWORD.

Apollo Sword

POWER:-----==
DEFENSE:-----
STRENGTH:-----
DURABILITY:-----==
WEIGHT:---

Immense attacking
power, and energy
reviving effect.

Valkyrie

POWER:-----==
DEFENSE:-----==
STRENGTH:-----=
DURABILITY:-----
WEIGHT:---

Weapon gauge recovers
withing certain period
of time.

=====
=====

Korefuji

POWER:-----
DEFENSE:-----
STRENGTH:-----
DURABILITY:-----
WEIGHT:-----
Standard weapon.

Onimaru

POWER:-----=
DEFENSE:--
STRENGTH:-----
DURABILITY:--
WEIGHT:-----
Strong weapon, but
consumes energy.

Iron Slasher

POWER:-----
DEFENSE:-----=
STRENGTH:-----=
DURABILITY:-----=
WEIGHT:---
Outstanding weapon
destruction capability
and durability.

Kojiro's Sword

POWER:-----
DEFENSE:-----
STRENGTH:-----
DURABILITY:-----=
WEIGHT:-----
Excellent reach
1.5 times longer than
KOREFUJI.

Water Moon

POWER:----
DEFENSE:-----=
STRENGTH:-
DURABILITY:---
WEIGHT:----
Highly defensive
blade with strength
recovering effect.

Two Handed Sword

POWER:-----==
DEFENSE:-----
STRENGTH:-----
DURABILITY:-----
WEIGHT:-----
Extremely high
attack power.

Falx

POWER:-----
DEFENSE:---
STRENGTH:-----
DURABILITY:-----=
WEIGHT:-
Enables extremely
fast attacks.

Murasame

POWER:-----==
DEFENSE:-----==
STRENGTH:-----
DURABILITY:-
WEIGHT:---
Renders any defense
almost ineffective.

=====
=====
2.2.06 Siegfried

Faust

POWER:-----
DEFENSE:-----
STRENGTH:-----
DURABILITY:-----
WEIGHT:-----
Standard weapon.

Grimblade

POWER:-----==
DEFENSE:---
STRENGTH:---
DURABILITY:-----=
WEIGHT:---
Consumes tremendous
energy when attacking.

Atlas Sword

POWER:---
DEFENSE:-----=
STRENGTH:--
DURABILITY:-----
WEIGHT:-----=
Highly defensive
blade with strength
recovering effect.

Flamberge

POWER:-----
DEFENSE:---
STRENGTH:-----
DURABILITY:-----=
WEIGHT:--
Enables swift attacks.

7 Branch Blade

POWER:-
DEFENSE:--
STRENGTH:-----
DURABILITY:-
WEIGHT:-----
Weapon gauge recovers
within certain period
of time.

Hard Steel Blade

POWER:-----=
DEFENSE:-----
STRENGTH:-----=
DURABILITY:-----=
WEIGHT:-----
A tremendously
powerful sword.

Claymore

POWER:-----
DEFENSE:--
STRENGTH:---
DURABILITY:-----
WEIGHT:-
Enables extremely
fast attacks.

SoulEdge

POWER:-----=
DEFENSE:-----=
STRENGTH:-----=
DURABILITY:-----=
WEIGHT:-----=
*

The ultimate evil
sword. Dangerously
powerful.

=====
=====

2.2.07 Seung Mina

Zanbatoh

POWER:-----
DEFENSE:-----
STRENGTH:-----
DURABILITY:-----
WEIGHT:-----
Standard weapon.

Tiger Fang

POWER:-----=
DEFENSE:---
STRENGTH:-----
DURABILITY:-----
WEIGHT:-----=
Strong weapon, but
consumes energy.

Long Handled Sword

POWER:-
DEFENSE:---
STRENGTH:-
DURABILITY:---
WEIGHT:--
Enables very fast
attacks.

Nagamaki

POWER:-----
DEFENSE:-----=
STRENGTH:-----
DURABILITY:-----
WEIGHT:---
Enables swift attacks.

Halbard

POWER:-----=
DEFENSE:-----
STRENGTH:-----
DURABILITY:-----
WEIGHT:-----=

Immense attacking
power, and energy
reviving effect.

Morning Star

POWER:-----
DEFENSE:-----=
STRENGTH:-----=
DURABILITY:-----=
WEIGHT:-----
A stron defensive
weapon.

Sickled Spear

POWER:---
DEFENSE:-----=
STRENGTH:-
DURABILITY:---
WEIGHT:-
Enables extremely
fast attacks.

Spiked Mace

POWER:-----=
DEFENSE:-----=
STRENGTH:-----=
DURABILITY:---
WEIGHT:----
Weapon gauge recovers
within certain period
of time.

=====
=====

2.2.08 Li Long

Falcon

POWER:-----
DEFENSE:-----
STRENGTH:-----
DURABILITY:-----
WEIGHT:-----
Standard weapon.

Snake Wind

POWER:-----=
DEFENSE:--
STRENGTH:--
DURABILITY:---
WEIGHT:-----

Inflicts damage
against opponent's
defense.

Titan

POWER:-----
DEFENSE:-----=
STRENGTH:-----
DURABILITY:-----=
WEIGHT:---
A strong defensive
weapon.

Phoenix

POWER:---
DEFENSE:-----=
STRENGTH:-
DURABILITY:-----
WEIGHT:--
Excellent in speed and
defense.

Steel Dragon

POWER:-----
DEFENSE:-----
STRENGTH:-----=
DURABILITY:-----=
WEIGHT:-----
Excellent at
destroying weapons.

White Tiger

POWER:-----=
DEFENSE:-----
STRENGTH:-----
DURABILITY:-----=
WEIGHT:-----
Extremely high
attack poer.

Asura

POWER:-----=
DEFENSE:-----=
STRENGTH:-
DURABILITY:-----
WEIGHT:---
Excellent in both
attack and defense.

Twin Thunder

POWER:=====
DEFENSE:=====
STRENGTH:=====
DURABILITY:=====
WEIGHT:-
Enables extremely
fast attacks.

=====
=====

2.2.09 Voldo

Katar

POWER:-----
DEFENSE:-----
STRENGTH:-----
DURABILITY:-----
WEIGHT:-----
Standard weapon.

Full Moon

POWER:---
DEFENSE:=====
STRENGTH:-
DURABILITY:=====
WEIGHT:--
A strong defensive
weapon.

Iron Claw

POWER:-
DEFENSE:---
STRENGTH:-
DURABILITY:---
WEIGHT:-
Enables extremely
fast attacks.

Guillotine

POWER:=====
DEFENSE:-----
STRENGTH:=====
DURABILITY:=====
WEIGHT:-----
Heavy, but its weight
produces outstanding
power.

Poison Arrow

POWER:---
DEFENSE:-----
STRENGTH:---
DURABILITY:---
WEIGHT:---
Inflicts damage
against opponent's
defense.

Buffalo Horn

POWER:-----=
DEFENSE:-----
STRENGTH:---
DURABILITY:-----
WEIGHT:--
Recovers energy.

Pata

POWER:-----
DEFENSE:-----=
STRENGTH:-----
DURABILITY:-----
WEIGHT:----
An extremely strong
defensive weapon.

SoulEdge

POWER:-----=
DEFENSE:-----=
STRENGTH:-----=
DURABILITY:-----=
WEIGHT:-----=
The ultimate evil
sword. 2.6 times
longer than KATAR.

=====
=====

2.2.10 Cervantes

SoulEdge

POWER:-----=
DEFENSE:-----=
STRENGTH:-----=
DURABILITY:-----=
WEIGHT:-----=
The ultimate
evil sword.

Main Gauche

POWER:--
DEFENSE:---
STRENGTH:-
DURABILITY:---
WEIGHT:--
Enables swift attacks.

Defender

POWER:---
DEFENSE:-----=
STRENGTH:-----
DURABILITY:-----=
WEIGHT:---
A strong defensive
weapon.

Jirotoh

POWER:-----=
DEFENSE:---
STRENGTH:-----=
DURABILITY:-----=
WEIGHT:---
Extremely good at
destroying weapons.

Katana

POWER:---
DEFENSE:-----
STRENGTH:-----
DURABILITY:----
WEIGHT:-----
Inflicts damage
against opponent's
defense.

3 Bladed Edge

POWER:-----=
DEFENSE:-----
STRENGTH:-
DURABILITY:--
WEIGHT:---
Extremely high
attack power.

Heavy Lance

POWER:-----
DEFENSE:-----=
STRENGTH:-----=
DURABILITY:-----=
WEIGHT:-----

WEIGHT:----

Excellent at
destroying weapons.

Serpent's Tongue

POWER:-----

DEFENSE:-----

STRENGTH:-

DURABILITY:-----

WEIGHT:-

Enables extremely
fast attacks.

=====

3. Soul Calibur Arcade/Website

3.1 History

3.1.00 Prologue:

By history a man becomes a soldier,
through history a soldier becomes a hero.

This is a tale of souls and swords,
transcending the world and all it's history,
told for all eternity...

From a bard's song in the fourteenth century
Author unknown

The story begins with Captain Cervantes, one of the most dreadful pirates of the era. After he acquired the evil twin swords "Soul Edge", Cervantes and his mighty ship the "Adrian" struck fear into the Atlantic Ocean. Once fully possessed by the demon swords, he slew his entire crew and the residence of his port base in Spain. After the bloodshed, Cervantes rested himself at the remains of what was once known as the "Black Tail Inn". Temporarily satisfied with its twisted desire to consume souls, the evil swords rested and prepared to create the "Child of the Evil Swords"...

During the next twenty years, the rumors of the evil swords spread throughout the world. Some believed it was the sword of salvation, while others called it the ultimate weapon. Some, selected by destiny and history, sought Soul Edge for personal reasons. Fortunately, few reached Soul Edge; those that did cursed their fate as the evil swords devoured their souls.

However there was one who fought the cursed fate... Sophitia, the sacred fighter of Hephaestus the God of Blacksmiths. During the grueling battle with Cervantes, she succeeded in destroying one of the twin swords. But in doing so, she was wounded as the pieces of the shattered sword rained upon her body. Cervantes, with wrath as if a part of him had been destroyed, was about to end her life when Taki the "Underground Hunter" challenged him.

Due to his loss of control from the destruction of one of the blades, the intense battle between Taki and Cervantes ended with the victory of the "Underground Hunter". She completed her mission by gathering a piece of the destroyed Soul Edge and left with the injured Sophitia.

Siegfried, the "Innocent Darkside," visited the port town seeking the sword of

legend for his vengeance, only to find the corpse of a pirate captain. Attracted by a sword clutched in the dead pirate's hand, Siegfried walked toward it take possession of the blade, but suddenly the corpse rose up enveloped in hell fire. It seemed as if an evil spirit had materialized on earth consuming Cervantes' body.

With a flash, mortal combat began. The Zweihander "Faust", roared in the hands of the boy, who seemed too little to bear such a heavy blade, and slashed through the air controlled by the madness in the youth's eyes. When the battle ended, all that remained was the burnt corpse and the boy grasping the now broken Zweihander. His green eyes reflected the Soul Edge bathed in hell fire...

The youth's warped spirit extended a hand to Soul Edge, as if being guided by the evil spirit which longed for a new host to maintain its power and control...

That night, some people at the Spanish seashore saw a mysterious but beautiful scene of a white column of light piercing the clouds and spreading through the sky. How could they have known, it was the birth of the Evil Seed, which would cause disasters throughout the world?

Thus started the next chapter in history.
This is a tale from the sixteenth century...

=====
=====

3.1.01 Chapter I:

Name
Kilik

Weapon
Rod

Weapon Name
Kali-Yuga (rod) Dvapara-Yuga
(mirror)

Style
Secret Art of Ling-Sheung Su
Style Rod

Age
19

Birth Date
Feburary 9

Family
Unknown

Birth Place
Unknown

Height
5 foot 6 inches

Weight
139 lbs

Kilik - Awaken Destiny

The Ling Sheng Su Temple rested on a quite mountain deep in the interior of China. This temple is considered to be the finest school for the sword and rod arts. Many heroes of history have come from this great temple and to this day the monks here are still strong. Up until 10 years ago the temple had very little communication with the outside world. But one-day, robbers raided the neighboring town and the monks opened their doors and saved the village. Now the great temple accepts anyone regardless of age or gender, so long as they have a strong fighting spirit. Since then it has been customary for the children of soldiers to visit the temple to brush up their skills and the farmers and merchants to come to the temple to learn some basic techniques to protect themselves from robbers.

In the main hall of the Ling Sheng Su Temple there were three sacred weapons call the Kali-Yuga, the Krita-Yuga and the Dvapara-Yuga. No one knew why the treasures were kept there, the reasons stretch far beyond recorded history and the monks of the temple have strictly enforced the rules.

One winter day a baby was found deserted in front of the Ling Sheng Su Temple. Despite weeks of searching the child's parents could not be found and thus the baby was named "Kilik" and adopted by the temple. Kilik grew up healthy and trained himself with the monks and pupils of the temple in the ways of the rod from a very young age. He also had a sworn elder sister named Xianglian. She too was adopted by the temple and there she studied the art of the sword. She felt close to Kilik since they were both orphans and she loved him as a younger brother.

Years passed and Kilik grew into a strong and healthy youth. By natural talent or not Kilik mastered art of the rod taught from Master Han and became one of the school's finest students. With his skill and warm personality he was able to serve as one of the school's teachers. Thus it was natural that he would be nominated to be the successor of the Ling Sheng Su style rod at the succession ceremony held once every 20 years. At the ceremony he would be granted the Kali-Yuga, on of the three scared weapons of the temple. As the successor his status in the temple would be raise atop the rod school as the most skilled student in the temple.

The cool wind of the night was gently blowing. Kilik couldn't sleep and sat on the stone wall behind the main hall and looked up into the moon lit sky. This was Kilik's favorite place within the temple. When he was a child he used to come here and look into the stars each time his heart was sad. Suddenly he sensed a new presence behind him, there stood Xianglian. She too was elected to be one of the successors of the treasures, the Dvapara-Yuga. As they talked they remember many old memories; this place was special to both of them.

Why did Xianglian, master of the sword, succeed the Dvapara-Yuga and not the Krita-Yuga?

Kilik finally asked her the question that had troubled his mind for so long. Xianglian quietly replied that there were only two of three treasures currently in the temple and that the Krita-Yuga had been lost over ten years ago.

The scared weapons had been a spiritual goal for the students of the temple. In days of turbulence, such as attacks by robbers, the thought of losing one of the treasures would have been a great moral damage to the temple. Thus the fact that the Krita-Yuga was missing was strictly taboo and only a few of the highest-

ranking monks knew about it. They knew they had to hide the fact that the Krita-Yuga was missing and more over the thief was non other than a high ranking monk of temple once nominated to be the successor of the Kali-Yuga!

Surprised to hear one of the three treasure had been lost, Kilik stood shocked as Xianglian continued her tale. "Those are not all the facts, I am not worthy the succeed the art of the sword because the thief of the Krita-Yuga is... no other than... my father."

She learned of this when she overheard a conversation between the school's masters. Master Han was aware Xianglian had heard and said to her gently, "You have no connection to these facts, cut your own path in life and never let the act of your parents rule you."

At the time Xianglian was too young to understand but as she grew she understood the words of the master. However she still felt she had no right to be the successor of the art of the sword. If she did succeed and people discovered the truth they would not except her. And Xianglian herself did not wish to be the successor. This was her decision after long and deep thought on the matter and Master Han understood her choice and nominated her to be the successor of the mirror. The skills need to be the successor of the mirror were not natural fighting talent but the power of a pure soul and a strong mind. In those areas she was more than strong enough.

Silence fell on the couple as their thoughts reflected on understanding the other's situation. The cool night breeze grew cold as they began to stand to leave for a good night's rest. They suddenly felt the moonlight grow stronger and looked into the sky and saw a beautiful display of lights covering the sky. But some how the couple sensed the evil within the light and ran to a nearby hall. Deep in the hall lay the shrine for the sacred treasures. Some priests in the hall were preparing for tomorrow's ceremonies when they felt the evil presence and handed Kilik and Xianglian the Kali-Yuga and the Dvapara-Yuga to fight the evil.

It all began some hours before in the land of Spain when a young mercenary carelessly touched the forbidden evil sword Soul Edge. At that moment Soul Edge lost it inner balance, expelled its evil will and scattered the Evil Seeds of disaster all over the world!

A part of that evil energy reached across the continent to this mountain village and fell upon the temple. It forced pure evil into the people of the temple, driving them mad with rage as they started killing each other.

Poisoned by the Evil Seed, Kilik also went berserk with one of the three treasures in his hands. He was so strong he defeated many people and still relentlessly fought on. Only Xianglian with the Dvapara-Yuga on her shoulder could escape the evil influence. Realizing the power of the mirror she tried to get close to Kilik to place the mirror on him but the people of the temple seized by the Evil Seed savagely attacked her.

When his senses returned Kilik had no memory of what had happened. Though he remained confused he was forced to fight his attackers in order to survive. His master who rescued and raised him, the friends he had trained with, his own students, everyone attacked Kilik or ruthlessly killed each other. Kilik's words never reach them, tired and confused by the madness Kilik tried to escape from the temple. But just then Kilik sensed a bloodthirsty presence behind him, he raised his rod in defense and saw a sight he had hoped never to see. Xianglian had turned into a puppet of madness; Kilik desperately repelled her attacks that held strength clearly beyond any woman's. He was exhausted, his consciousness was fading and then he closed his eyes and moved without thought. A moment later

he felt a pain on his left cheek and a response in his hands. The something warm trailed down the rod and covered his hands. He opened his eyes reluctantly and in horror gaze upon the Kali-Yuga piecing the heart of Xianglian.

"AHHHHHHHHHH...!!!!", a sad cry echoed in the darkness of night. He remembered nothing after that.

As the sky began to turn gray from the east a figure stood in the now silent temple. The old man remained calm despite the mountains of death and rivers of blood that fell upon his eyes. He found Kilik laying alone unconscious. The old man set fire to the once great temple and carried Kilik to his home.

Kilik had been asleep for two days and now awoke in an unfamiliar house. He found his body covered in scars and signs that his wounds had been cared for but he couldn't summon the strength to move. He realized the old man sitting in front of him had taken care of him despite not knowing who he was.

The man told Kilik that he was the adviser to the Ling Sheng Su arts of fighting and that he was in charge of teaching the secret arts of the Ling Sheng Su style. He told Kilik that he could never take the Dvapara-Yuga off his shoulder no matter what might happen. The old man told a silent Kilik that he must concentrate on healing his body and nothing more.

Time has passed and Kilik recovered the ability to walk. One night he looked up into the southern sky, the nightmare of that night returned to his mind.

Kilik couldn't bear his life. Though he had to defend himself he felt the weight of guilt bearing down on him, he who had killed the people that raised him as an orphan, his master, his comrades whom he shared joy and sorrow and most of all his beloved Xianglian.

"I do not deserve life..." Kilik wanted to die. But, how strange it was. He fought desperately for the chance to live then and yet the pain of living was more than he could bear. Then Kilik suddenly realized, "Why was the Dvapara-Yuga on me when Xianglian had placed it on her shoulder? If I survived because of the power of the mirror, then Xianglian must have gave her own life to entrust me with the mirror. She gave me life... TELL ME SISTER WHY MUST I LIVE!?"

"Time will give you the answer." The old man told an agonized Kilik.

From that night the old man broke his silence and began the story. The true source of the tragedy at the temple was known as the "Evil Seed". In fact as they spoke evil spirits possessed both Kilik and the Kali-Yuga, but the power of the Dvapara-Yuga suppressed the evil and protected them. If the mirror was removed from Kilik he would be seized with evil and run berserk just as the people of the temple had. If the Dvapara-Yuga was removed from Kilik's body, Kilik would turn completely evil. If the Kali-Yuga was separated from Kilik it too would cause disasters, therefore Kilik and the two ancient treasures could never be separated. Then the old man told the legend of the evil sword, "Soul Edge".

"You must live as I once did." The eyes of the mentor shined deeply as if he could foresee everything.

Kilik decided to train himself under the old master. As Kilik trained hard to master the secret arts of the Ling Sheng Su style rod and three years passed quickly. He learned to control himself and the Kali-Yuga to stop the possession.

"I order you to your final trial."

The final trial was a journey to purify himself in the west.

"Everything is waiting for you in the west." With the final word of the master, Kilik left the hermitage to begin his quest.

Epilogue:

Despite losing its physical shape the demon blade still burnt violently and prepared to be scatter throughout the world again.

Kilik chanted quietly but powerfully, "Om Vajradharma hrih"
The instant the Dvapara-Yuga clash the evil flame was sealed.

Through his many battles he learned to control the evil within. Despite his great victories Kilik remained unsatisfied and returned to the pure train ground.

Here at the end of the earth where the sky begins his eyes reflected the celestial bodies of the farthest heavens.

=====
=====
3.1.02 Chapter II:

Name

Xianghua

Weapon

Chinese Sword

Weapon Name

Krita-Yuga

Style

The sword art learned from her
mother

Age

16

Birth Date

April 2

Family

Father was said to be dead.
Mother passed away five years
ago.

Birth Place

Ming Empire

Height

5 foot

Weight

101 lbs

Xianghua - Itenerant Flower of the Breeze

The story begins some decades before our heroine was born...

The Chai family has been and continues to be a strong family with a lineage of proud soldiers serving the nation.

Once the eldest son succeeded his father's estate the remaining sons left the house to search for their independence. The second son of the house settled down in the town where the Ling Sheng Su temple was located since the great school was considered to be the strongest martial arts school in the land. The son was intent on following the traditions of the Chai family and these traditions stated that regardless of man or woman all members of the family must become skilled martial-artists and serve the nation. His daughter, Xiangfei, was born in the town and attended the Ling Sheng Su school to learn the art of swordplay. Due to her bloodline or not her diligent training over the years brought her a level of skill that surpassed even the monks of the great school. If only she had been born a man, then surely she would have been nominated to be the successor of the secret arts of the Ling Sheng Su sword style.

After her father passed away she began to train even harder and soon Xiangfei fell in love with one of the monks of the Ling Sheng Su temple. His name was Kong Xiuqiang, the probable candidate to be the successor of the one of the three treasures of the temple; the rod called "Kali-Yuga". Sadly this was a forbidden love. They managed to keep their love secret for many years and not until their daughter named Xianglian was born unto them did the monks know of their relationship.

This was Xianglian's second year.

A candidate could never sway from the pure path and thus the school drove the lovers apart. The school took little Xianglian. With both her daughter and her lover gone Xiangfei could not bear her sorrow and decided to leave town and never return.

Their sworn brother Han Dongxiu heard she was leaving told a penitent and depressed Kong. "How can you just sit here and wait? Leave now! Create your own future with your own strength!"

With Han's help Kong was able to sneak away from the temple and down to the town under the veil of darkness. He gave Xiangfei a sword as proof of their love and as a reminder of the hope they would meet again. It was all he could do.

Xiangfei left the town and told none her final destination. She left pregnant with her second child but she hoped Kong would soon forget about her and focus on his candidacy for the Kali-Yuga. She returned to her noble family. With the Chai family's long lineage of soldiers in the Ming Empire capitol she was able to join the ranks of the soldiers. There she bore her second daughter Xianghua. Xianghua was brought into the Ming family and her mother never told her about the past. Meanwhile the Ling Sheng Su temple was facing a great crisis. The "Krita-Yuga", one of the three treasures of the temple was missing. Investigations traced the theft back to Kong and he was immediately excommunicated and drove from the temple. Xianglian was left alone and the temple decided to raise her as an orphan.

Kong followed traces of Xianglian and discovered her link to the Chai family.

However the Chai family told him, "She believes that you are in the temple training hard. She would certainly be sad if she met you. We beg you, please leave here and take no more action."

As persuaded Kong left the house without knowing his second daughter had been born. He could never return to the temple and so he left the town and disappeared.

Meanwhile the temple's search for the Krita-Yuga continued and the first suspect was Xiangfei. The search party found her but the sword they could not. All they found was little Xianghua playing with an old sword and Xiangfei looking after her daughter. The search party returned to the temple in failure and after many years the temple gave up the large-scale search.

How could they have known? No one knew, not little Xianghua, the search party, the Chai family, or even Xiangfei herself knew that the old sword in Xianghua's hands was none other than the Krita-Yuga one of the three treasures of the Ling Sheng Su temple ranking with the Kali-Yuga and the Dvapara-Yuga. To prevent its true power from being abused and in case it was ever separated from the other three treasures the Krita-Yuga would change its shape and sleep in silence. Only Kong, who separated it from the other treasures, knew this secret.

Xianghua grew up never knowing she had an elder sister and by her tenth year she had acquired the basic arts of swordplay. Her mother's death drove her to train as hard as her dear mother once had and by her sixteenth year her skill was so renowned she applied for a position in as one of the royal guards of the Ming Emperor.

The emperor of the Ming Empire irritated by the lack of progress searching for "Soul Edge" the hero's sword, decided to send his royal guards as the third searching party. Xianghua's best friend Meimei and Ming's Imperial Maid of Honor heard that Xianghua was part of the search party and asked her to look into her brother, Li Long's health. Xianghua agreed to the task.

Xianghua had been training herself in martial arts under her mother since she was a child. "You were born to complete an important task... fight your way through your cursed destiny!" were the last words of her tender mother. Xianghua left for the quest, having her keepsake sword in hand. More and more of the members of the search party dispersed chasing various bits of information and rumors. Xianghua left the troop as well chasing a hint of information when she met Kilik. Was it fate? What would happen when the three treasures meet in one place...?

Epilogue:

As if aware of the decisive moment her sword,
the Krita-Yuga, revealed its true form.

She channeled her pure spirit through the sword and it gave her an unparalleled power.

The grueling battle ended as Xianghua stood in victory.

Sunlight split the nimbus and showered on her body.

"I did the right thing... didn't I mother?"

She narrowed her eyes as the sunlight danced on her naive visage and warmed her soul.

=====
=====
3.1.03 Chapter III:

Name

Maxi

Weapon

Nunchaku

Weapon Name

Fatibaru

Style

Shissen Karihadi

Age

24

Birth Date

May 1

Family

Parents passed away

Birth Place

Ryukyu Kingdom

Height

5 foot 9 inches

Weight

126 lbs

Blood Type

O

Maxi - Dandy from the South Sea

Maxi was a pirate from Ryukyu Kingdom who sailed freely like the wind. Maxi had anchored his ship at an Indian port to enjoy the night when Kilik arrived searching for a ship to the west. Kyam, Maxi's sworn brother, was taking care of the ship while Maxi was out. Kyam liked Kilik because he chose their ship among many. "You have a good eye! Be our guest and I'll ask my brother for you!" Kyam laughed.

As Kilik was waiting Maxi's return, the weather grew hostile. As a strong wind began to blow, a mysterious ship approached within a thick fog. As soon as the ship moored along Maxi's, a crowd of monsters with dead eyes attacked Kilik. Without knowing their reasons for attacking him, Kilik fought the monsters with Kali-Yuga but the monsters managed to slaughter Maxi's crew.

The battle was raging as Maxi returned. "You bastards! Prepare to die!!!" roared Maxi.

Maxi and Kilik alone managed to drive the monsters back, but as they did the giant, Astaroth, bearing a huge ax mortally wounded Kyam and pulled the Dvapara-Yuga off Kilik as they withdrew. Without the Dvapara-Yuga Kilik lost control and

attacked Maxi. Maxi defended himself and placed the Dvapara-Yuga upon Kilik. The instant he did Kilik lost consciousness.

"Brother ... take Kilik west, and see the world for yourself ... on behalf of us.... " Kyam begged Maxi in his last breath. Maxi lost everything in an instant. He decided to travel with Kilik and take revenge on Astaroth for Kyam.

Epilogue:

His fight with the demon blade was all Maxi could bare.

"Hehehe... you are too late"

"No! Say this isn't... please!!"

"I... must... leave..."

"Kilik... I..."

"MAXI!!!"

Kilik hung his head in silence.

Xianghua also stood in silence.

The wind is blowing, clouds are floating, all unaware of their travels.

"Our memories are all..."

A windy voice of a cloud whispered in the dandy's tone.

=====
=====
3.1.04 Chapter IV:

Name

Heishiro Mitsurugi

Weapon

Katana

Weapon Name

Shishi-Oh

Style

Tenpu-kosai-ryu Kai

Age

25

Birth Date

June 8

Family

Parents and brothers all taken
by diseases.

Birth Place

Japan

Height

5 foot 7 inches

Weight
143 lbs

Blood Type
AB

Mitsurugi - Mercenary in a Warlike Age

Mitsurugi lost all traces of Soul Edge and remained unaware of its true form. Without a weapon superior to the Tanegashima rifle he felt he could never return home. But his irritation drove him mad and he chose to duel against the Tanegashima in front of lords. Despite his skill the Tanegashima bested him and Mitsurugi took a bullet in the chest.

Completely defeated, Mitsurugi realized he needed to study additional arts of the sword to match the Tanegashima rifle. After learning new styles he heard the story of a knight named Nightmare and his invincible sword roaming Europe in a trail of blood.

"Prepare for my arrival, 'Naito-whatever'! I'll be there to take your sword!"

Mitsurugi once again prepared for his journey.

Epilogue:

After countless battles the demon blade
"Soul Edge" was finally in his hands.

While returning to his homeland
he was ambushed by pirate ship.

The bloodthirsty pirates surrounded Mitsurugi.
As he looked down the barrel of their guns he smiled and murmured,
"I've had enough of duels... let's play with the sword!"
This was the last anyone heard of the samurai who was called
"The mercenary in the warlike age".
No one knows where his journey ended.

=====
=====

3.1.05 Chapter V:

Name
Taki

Weapon
Ninjatou

Weapon Name
Rekki-maru & Mekki-maru

Style
Musou-baton-ryu

Age
25

Birth Date

Unknown

Family

Parents and brothers all taken
by diseases. Master Toki

Birth Place

Japan

Height

5 foot 7 inches

Weight

117 lbs

Blood Type

A

Taki - Dream Shadow of Demon Sealer

Taki's Journey

The battle was beyond imagination. A conflict against a powerful dark energy that made the ghosts she had conquered in the past seem like child's play. Her armor, which she had been improving for years, could not bear the pulse of evil and cracked and her sealing spells proved useless. At last her beloved and proud Rekki-maru cracked as the mad pirate shrieked in death.

Carrying the wounded girl that managed to destroy one of the evil blades Taki left the Spanish harbor, and as she left she felt an immense explosion of evil energy behind her, the release of the Evil Seed. Taki removed the shards of the evil sword from Sophitia's wounded body and cured her. After she returned Sophitia to her family she left for her homeland with the shards of the Soul Edge. During her travels she was reminded of the events that unfolded before her departure...

...It all began before Rekki-maru began to resonate with the curse of Soul Edge. Toki, the chief of the clan and Taki's foster father, suddenly summoned all the ninjas of the clan and addressed them, "Hachibei who once lead this great clan with me has stolen the spiritual ninja-to Mekki-maru and ran away with his daughter Chie. They are now nuke-nin!(Ed. Nuke-nin are ninja that leave their clan without permission, usually ninja can not leave the clan until they die because the secrets of their clan and lord. Thus the clan is responsible for the nuke-nin and must execute them as soon as possible. This was one of the tragedies of the ninja, as a nuke-nin if the ninja wanted to live they must kill their friends, kith and kin that now sought their lives.)I order find them and return Mekki-maru dead or alive!"

Seeing the pure fury in his eyes Taki began to grow suspicious in Toki for the first time.

No one could find Hachibei; his skill in hiding was easily the finest in the clan. Only Taki with her unusual sixth sense and massive intelligence network could even begin to track him down. Eventually after following a trace of Chie, her childhood friend, Taki was able to locate Hachibei.

Hachibei and Chie ran a small stall on a vacant road. A man of extraordinary strength lived with them at the time. Taki avoided trouble and contacted

Hachibei while the man was out. Hachibei was surprised to find Taki in front of him at first but eventually his face filled with relief. He showed Taki Mekki-maru and began talking through his heavy coughs.

"Toki is possessed by madness and has lost his senses. This Mekki-maru controls him now."

The ninja-to she took from Hachibei seems quiet and dull even though Hachibei claimed it had extraordinary spiritual powers.

"Toki is not the Toki we knew, if he comes in contact with this blade again... I am in my final days. I beg you Taki never let Toki have this blade! Never!"

Hachibei was ill and he knew Toki would find him soon. With these new facts Taki's suspicions in Toki grew, she left and decided to let Hachibei and Chie go free. She hid Mekki-maru and returned to her clan to confirm her suspicions.

"A Chinese man, Chie's lover, has taken Mekki-maru. Hachibei and Chie have already been killed."

In hearing her report Toki grinned and ordered the clan to pursue the Chinese man. Toki was not the Toki Taki had known, his eyes were full of evil and Taki could see the madness behind them. Her suspicions were confirmed.

At the same time Mekki-maru suddenly changed, she knew the evil blade was resonating with an unexpected power and she believed the source to be an evil sword in a foreign country. Taki crossed the sea for the first time...

Taki returned homeland with a shard of the Soul Edge. She tried to drive the shard into her beloved but broken ninja-to "Rekki-maru", but they were resistant to one another and refused to be joined. Meanwhile, Taki was attacked repeatedly by assassins who seemed to be sent by Toki, her master ninja. It was an easy task for Taki to drive them away, but she found that their purpose was to steal the mysterious spiritual ninja-to "Mekki-maru", which Hachibei had entrusted to Taki.

"In Mekki-maru there is sealed a fearful power. Never let Toki have the ninja-to. You are only one that I could entrust..."

Reminded of Hachibei's words, Taki tried to fuse the shard of Soul Edge with Mekki-maru. The two were immediately united and began to shed a dark aura. An aura so dark even common people could sense it. Sensing the blade's potential Taki closed it in its sheath and sealed it with magic cards. However even this was not enough power to suppress the power of Mekki-maru. And the instant she ran out of power she was captured by Geki, Toki's right hand man and his highest-ranking ninja. Exhausted from battling Mekki-maru Taki could not resist the strength of Geki as he took Mekki-maru from her hands.

"Respectable Taki, I'm sorry to say this ninja-to belongs to Master Toki. You must have thought you deceived us well, but everything was planned from the beginning. Now it is time for you to rest."

"No Geki don't release it!"

A careless Geki watch in horror as his right arm was blown to bits as the blade shed a dark shock wave upon its release from the sheath. His shriek of pain split the bamboo forest; Taki seized the moment, grabbed Mekki-maru and ran past Geki's assistants Gaki and Doki.

"Humans should never have this power... especially Toki..."

At the same time, the rumor of the berserker bearing the new evil sword reached Japan. Taki realized that the evil sword must be the remaining Soul Edge, because her Rekki-maru still resonated like before. Taki planned to have the two evil swords, Soul Edge and Mekki-maru, battle each other to offset their evil powers.

Thus Taki became a nuke-nin like Hachibei. The assassins under Toki's direct control were powerful and fearful ninja and among them Geki, having lost his right arm, wished to taste her blood most of all. Driving their attacks back with her various skills, the Dream Shadow of Demon Sealer continued her quest west.

And now the powerful ghost Gel-o-fury gained enough power from the Evil Seed to break Taki's seals in the bamboo forest. Its direction was mostly likely the Hoko-ji Temple in Kyoto. The great temple of madness constructed by warped ideals would be the final battleground with the ghost.

Taki chose to share her fate with Mekki-maru for a while. Often while chasing the Soul Edge, Taki would look at Mekki-maru and think "what terrible powers... but, isn't there any way to control it?"

Epilogue:

"Spirits born from evil, I command; BEGONE!!!"
Mekki-maru channeled Taki's full spiritual power
and slashed Inferno.

The ninjatou, which bore the same evil spirit as the demon blade,
was now under her control.
However Mekki-maru still quivered and Taki remained uncertain in the blade.
"It still resonates...?"

Still, she knew that her mission would be complete...
As always her parting words rang out,
"The deed is done."

=====
=====

3.1.06 Chapter VI:

Name
Voldo

Weapon
Katar

Weapon Name
Shame & Blame

Style
Own style

Age
46

Birth Date
August 25

Family
Parents and four brothers, all
killed in wars.

Birth Place
Palermo, Italy

Height
6 foot

Weight
185 lbs

Blood Type
A

Voldo - Hell Guardian

After his unsuccessful search for Soul Edge, Voldo returned to the Money Pit and found the pit flooded by a storm. He took every means to drain and restore the pit but finally gave up as an entire section sunk under water. Meanwhile, a female fighter violated the Money Pit searching for a note Vercci had left about Soul Edge.

Voldo allows no one to invade his Master's sanctuary! From darkness the guardian attacked the female fighter, but she was armed with a mysterious weapon and her fighting style troubled him. The battle ended when the female fighter ran away guarding herself with her weapon. Voldo kneeled in front of Master Vercci's coffin, as usual, to report that the invader was cleared. Suddenly, he heard the sweet voice.

"Voldo, didn't you feel her dark aura? She had the scent of Soul Edge... Chase her, and bring me Soul Edge! Do you understand? Remember, I trust you... "

Hearing the voice of the master, rose colors swept into Voldo's grayish cheeks and hot blood flowed through his veins. Voldo left the Money Pit again to get Soul Edge.

Epilogue:

The instant Voldo's hands touched the blade he writhed in the flood of its twisted energy.

"Leave your soul to the sword..."
a sweet voice echoed in his mind.

Suddenly all his pain disappeared,
he regained his youth and his memory returned.

His eyes opened widely and reflected
the soft smile of his master's face.

The master's quest was over.

As was his wish.

Eternal joy surrounded him within the lonely darkness.

=====
=====

3.1.07 Chapter VII:

Name
Sophitia Alexandra

Weapon
Short Sword & Small Shield

Weapon Name
Omega Sword & Elk Shield

Style
Saint Athena

Age
21

Birth Date
March 12

Family
Achelous (Father) Nike
(Mother) Cassandra (younger
sister) Lucius (younger brother)

Birth Place
Athens, under occupation of
Ottoman Empire.

Height
5 foot 6 inches

Weight
It's a secret.

Blood Type
B

Sophitia - Second Advent of the Vow

When she recovered her senses she found herself lying in her bed at home. She returned to her life as the daughter of a baker and has spent her days in peace. But one day on her way shopping with her sister, she suddenly lost consciousness.

"So many lives... disappearing... Soul Edge?"

Sophitia was rescued and carried back home by a youth named Rothion who lived in the next city. Since that day they were attracted to each other so strongly that they decided to become engaged. They were visiting the Temple of Hephaestus to report their engagement to him, when Hephaestus appeared before them. The God of Smiths revealed that the remaining Soul Edge was regaining its power and he needed Sophitia's help once again.

"Let me go in place of her", insisted Rothion.

"Rothion, you are a smith, aren't you? This time it is you who will forge the armor and weapon to protect Sophitia."

Hephaestus gave Rothion a raw chunk of sacred iron and instructed Sophitia that she must completely destroy the Soul Edge. She left home with the sword and shield that Rothion had forged from the iron. She pursued Soul Edge, purifying lands seized by the Evil Seed. Her eyes shined with the light of faith.

Epilogue:

With Hephaestus's oracle complete Sophitia returned to her love.

"Rothion, I... " "I know Sophie... "

The entire city joined them in celebrating their beautiful wedding.

As time pasted she gave birth to a new life.

"I can no longer hear the voices of the gods, but perhaps this baby can..."

Knowing the words or not the baby still returned its mother's smile.

=====
=====

3.1.08 Chapter VIII:

Name
Astaroth
Weapon
Giant Ax
Weapon Name
Klsdf Py Gyst
Style
Glkks
Age
3
Birth Date
September 3
Family
None
Birth Place
Unknown
Height
6 foot 4 inches

Weight
209 lbs

Blood Type
None

Astaroth - A Soldier of the Heretic

"Where... here... I... what..."

Hot air burned its throat; groaning spells clung to the ears. It opened its eyes. The chants echoed in the grand hall and ceased.

It recognized that a man stood high above it muttering, "Creation from nothing..."

"What... is... this monster? Is this..? I..."

"I made a first step toward a god...", murmured the man in an ecstasy.

"Shut up... you don't bother... what?"

It felt anger at the moment it was born, then found another feeling behind the man. It stared, but there was nothing.

"Agg... Uhrrrggggg... !"

It was bombarded with memories. At first it seemed the memories of a warrior who was fighting for something he looked for, but then followed by the chorus of shrieks of death.

Fair, despair, flash of blades, pain, and darkness.

"Ugrrr.....GhrraaaaaAAAAA.....!!!"

It cried out in the pain of birth.

Deep in the shrine the Grand Priest, Kyumm mrl py eltzk, ordered to the giant he created; "Find the demonic sword 'Soul Edge'!"

As the monster, brandishing an ax, was leaving the shrine, Kyumm mrl py eltzk grinned and yelled, "The great power that even god desires... With this power I shall reach the status of a god!"

Epilogue:

Astaroth returned to the Grand Priest
Kyumm mrl py eltzk with Soul Edge.

"Astaroth, you've returned!
Now the power surpassing the god will be mine..."

"Wha... what are you doing!?
Leave me! No... STOP IT!! NOOOOO!!!"

"NEED... MORE... SOULS..."

The two figures faded away in the scarlet flames.

What were Astaroth's true motives?

Perhaps beyond even the darkest nightmares.

Note - Executioner:

What they believe:

What they defy

The ancient cultic religion's calling translates as "the call of the executioner". The true name of the religion has remained hidden for many centuries.

Upper Priest Language -- py argria Parguria

Lower Priest Language -- pargia

History

The cult's origins are deep in history beginning along the coasts of the Black Sea in late BC. However the origins remain confused as some factions before "the Guardian of the Normal Stream" were organized before the religion melded into Greek mythology. These original factions rejected the Greek influence and developed their own desires of destruction to enlightenment and resurrection.

The cult's entire existence remained underground and thus it was able to escape the rise of Christianity and the other medieval religions. The religion gradually faded from history but still grows to this day (16th century) and developed many unique ideas that seemed to stem from Asian thought.

The cult's central guardian (god) is Ares the god of destruction and war. They believed in harnessing the god's power to control life (resurrection) and sought immortality. During these times the fully body of "the Guardian of the Normal Stream" extended its hands well into the Middle East causing outbreaks of war in those regions.

The statues of snakes seen in the shrine are the remains of the other gods who controls resurrection.

Doctrine:

"Everything in the world is merely a repeat destruction and resurrection, even the world itself conforms without exception.

If we resist this stream it would mean the destruction of balance throughout the whole universe, and thus the loss of balance would mean the end of all existence.

This is the true destruction.

Humans are born, and die without question. This theory maintains the existence of the human being. And so it to maintains the control of the world.

"Therefore we must destroy the present world stuck in stagnation once and for all."

They believe they must place this great destruction on the highest priority. And thus according to the doctrine they too will be destroyed. Unless they perish the great destruction they seek will not complete its cycle. The great destruction will see the death of the gods, but the true gods will be resurrected and then the universe reborn.

This is the eternal cycle.

However there are a growing number of believers that interpret the doctrine to say that they should create the destruction themselves and so subversive faction are beginning to take root. There has also been a rise in believers that believe they will be saved at the time of destruction. The interpretation of this doctrine is of central debate within the organization. More and more the arguments among the Arc Priest are becoming violent.

Organization:

The Grand Priest: 1 person "The great being who sees everything"

Upper Priest Language -- kyumm mrl py eltzk cummail pyelzuk

Lower Priest Language -- kun petokoo

The Arc Priests: 7 people

7 places of the heavenly bodies: Sun, Moon, Mercury, Venus, Mars, Jupiter, Saturn.

The Earth is the center of the universe and fixed. This is the place of the Grand Priest.

Priests:

Twenty or more priests are confirmed in the entire organization. Some of them serves each Arc Priest.

There is some differences in thoughts and factionizm among the Arc Priests.

Believers:

The numbers of believers can not be confirmed because they do not gather in one place.

Language:

There are two general languages throughout the organization. Literary Style and Colloquial Style.

The Literary Style (Upper Priest language) is the holy language which the priest use to talk to their lord. Therefore it is only used during high ceremonies. To speak the scared language in any other case is punishable by death. This applies to the written verse as well.

In common ceremonies among the lower priest, such as admissions, the Colloquial Style (Lower Priest language) is used. The Colloquial is a simplification of the Literary Style. In high ceremonies such as bring new members in to "the call of the Executioner" the higher Literary Style is used.

The history of the languages is long and complex. Present Colloquial Style was born from the need for the ease of understanding and the simplification of the Literary Style. The languages are so complex that typically most priest solely learn the Colloquial Style. Therefore communication between the various priest is almost always in Colloquial Style. Most common believers do not even understand the Colloquial Style. They simply live and believe in the precepts of the religion.

"The Guardian of the Normal Stream"

Upper Priest Language -- py glkks estes mnz pygluksestes munz

Lower Priest Language -- phygle sestems

"Defend" (shifting meaning to "The way of defense")

Upper Priest Language -- glkks gylucks

Lower Priest Language -- gylks

"A creature resembling a new human being"

Upper Priest Language -- azr ss trzaous as stursa ulous

Lower Priest Language -- a sta ros

=====
=====

3.1.09 Chapter IX:

Name
Nightmare

Weapon
Soul Edge

Weapon Name
Soul Edge

Style
The memories of Soul Edge?

Age
Unknown

Birth Date
Unknown

Family
Unknown

Birth Place
Unknown

Height
5 foot 6 inches

Weight
209 lbs

Blood Type
Unknown

No one knew where the rumor came from.

The blue knight, with the mysterious crimson eyes, bore the huge sword in its malformed right hand. No one who saw the crimson eyes of the knight, from strong fighters to shrieking women, from innocent babies to tiny worms, could escape its blade as it devoured their souls. The single eye of the huge sword looked like it was smiling in enrapturement, as it tasted the blood of living things. Only the creatures of darkness that served its cold blade were exempt from its fevered hunger for new souls.

"Rumor, it's only a rumor." "Damn rumors all..."

Three years after the Spanish village saw the column of light, a small German village was in for a night of death as a knight with crimson eyes stood atop a cliff with the full moon to his back. It swallowed towns and villages in its path to the Black Woods. It was as if Captain Cervantes returned, but with a dreadfulness and evil far surpassing the original!

"We are coming, father..."

Epilogue:

The time had come.
With countless souls stolen from brave warriors
the demon blade transformed
into an apparition of his father.

"Siegfried, my son..." "Father..."

"Pierce me with the sword."
"Wha...!?"

"I am nothing more than an illusion.
Look for the truth within yourself."

Kneeling in front of his father's grave he murmured.
"Can there be a chance for redemption,
after what I have done?"

With that he left,
carrying the heavy burden of atonement on his back and
holding his father's will in his soul.

=====
=====
3.1.10 Chapter X:

Name
Isabella Valentine

Weapon
Snake Sword

Weapon Name
Ivy Blade

Style
Unrelated Link

Age
28

Birth Date
Dec 10

Family
Parents Deceased

Birth Place
London, England

Height
6 foot

Weight
128 lbs

Blood Type
AB

Ivy - Wreathing Blade of Isolation

Isabella Valentine was raised with love as the daughter of the noble English Valentine family. However, her father, Count Valentine, grew obsessed in mystery and drove the rich family into despair. The count died in madness and the famous Valentine family was ruined in a single generation.

"You are not our daughter in blood... your true parents are..." said her tender mother, as she followed her husband into death. Devastated with remorse, Isabella could care less about her "true parents".

One day, as she was collecting her parent's possessions, she discovered her father's diary. In the diary, she found that the count had become obsessed with alchemy and was investigating a sword named "Soul Edge" which was rumored to be the key to immortality. She became an alchemist to follow her father's dream and pursued the trail of Soul Edge.

Vercci an Italian death merchant... Adams an English curio dealer... Captain Cervantes the dreadful Spanish pirate... The more clues she found, the greater her suspicions grew. Once she discovered the true form of Soul Edge, which she believed was the sword of mystery, something in her mind snapped.

My father was driven mad by such a loathsome thing... this evil sword!" Despair and rage gave her a new goal in life, destroy the sword and cleanse the Valentine name.

To destroy the evil sword, she needed an even more powerful weapon. All her intellect and skill was utilized to create a weapon that could change its shape back and forth from sword to whip. However, the weapon was still just a lifeless tool that could change its shape mechanically, it could never defeat a living demonic blade. In order to use her weapon's true potential, it needed to live! But even giving it her own blood would not bring it to life.

Frantically, she tried everything she could think of. Once she found her understanding of alchemy useless, she began to explore ancient sorcery and repeated summoning rituals every midnight. But just like her father, she lost

her temper and struggled with rage. One night, her desperate desire finally summoned a malformed arm into the summoning gate. Isabella stared blankly at the arm as it sensed her attachment to her beloved sword and fused itself to it. Then a voice without sound uttered, "I, Cross of the Pledge, shall confer onto thee the Point in the Escutcheon of Destruction - Dexter Purpure." The ceremony ended as the being disappeared. Under frozen moonlight, the embodiment of Isabella's sanity cracked and twisted as it desired something unholy.

Her sword was completed beyond her wildest dreams! But Isabella still remains unaware of her true parents...

Revelations:

Massacre after massacre... devoted souls seeking the truth brought down... in the hands of its host Nightmare, the evil blade's monstrous eye smiled in satisfaction.

It used Astaroth and Lizardman as its hands to recover its strength with no risk to itself or its host. Soon it would regain the power it once had. The time had come here in Ostrheinsburg Castle with so many plots racing through each mind. Nightmare's plan was to have the evil blade eat the souls of Astaroth and Lizardman as the final touch since the monsters themselves sought to deprive the sword of its power.

Despite the evil air, Ivy walked down the isle to the back gate alone. She wanted to repay Nightmare for helping her create the Ivy Blade and so she helped him in his quest for resurrection. But she has finally reached her limit. These endless massacres left too many victims just for the art of resurrection. What was the true purpose of these tragedies?

This was the question that raced in her mind that bore no answer. Moreover she loathed the vile beast that carried out the massacres like cold executioners. The bloodthirsty giant must enjoy the slaughter and Lizardman was clearly not a creature from the earth. The eyes of Lizardman bore no emotion despite its heartless acts. Moreover everyone, including Nightmare, seemed to be plotting something terrible.

I can't help anymore.

A monster stood watch at the back gate of the castle. Looking for a way out of the castle while avoiding detection Ivy choose a secret underground passage. In the dark narrow isle she felt uneasy as if the eye of Nightmare's sword was gazing upon her. Her steps quicken as she saw the light of the exit in the distance. However as she emerged from the passage on to the ramparts she saw Astaroth and his clay golem subordinates waiting for her.

"It's strange that you are using an underground passage. Where are you going in such a hurry?" Astaroth smirked.

"I will no longer hold company with brutal creatures like you. I'm leaving this castle to complete my own quest." Ivy replied.

Hearing her words Astaroth said, "You stupid bitch, the object of your quest Soul Edge has sat in front of you all this time. Why didn't you feel anything when you gazed upon the eye? Well not that I care and the time is coming so devote your soul to the blade."

Dodging a sudden attack from the giant's axe Ivy drew her ever-morphing Ivy

Blade.

What did he say? That Nightmare's sword was none other than Soul Edge?

"I felt the evil aura of the blade but that is not proof enough to call it Soul Edge. Above all if it were the Soul Edge he would have never let me who wants to destroy the blade, near him. Or maybe he thought because I am a mere woman...", Ivy's thoughts raced on.

"You are a spare host I've heard"; Astaroth smirked and answered with such confidence that it seemed as if he knew everything.

A spare host? What could that mean?

Ivy was stunned for a moment with this thought and with out hesitation Astaroth seized the moment. The giant's blade was coming down on her head as she regained her mental focus. Narrowly she dodged the axe's blade but the hilt slammed her against the wall. Astaroth stood in front of a beaten Ivy and smiled. But suddenly the clay golems behind him became noisy.

"What's happening? Three... three strong souls? Good." Upon his subordinates' report Astaroth turned his back to Ivy and began to leave.

"Are you running away?! Take back the words you said!"

"I'm leaving for a more efficient hunt. Worry not, these golems will finish my work and take your soul for the blade." Astaroth replied.

The giant left and the clay golems attacked Ivy obeying his orders. A long and hard fight left a breathless Ivy standing in a pool of melted clay. Her beautiful face and body were covered in mud, and strength gone and her consciousness fading. Desperately she made her way back to the passage. She refused to believe Astaroth's words and needed to talk with Nightmare directly.

"Stop child of the evil sword," the voice of a young woman rang out from behind Ivy.

As Ivy looked back she saw an Asian woman in strange clothing standing there. Ivy wasn't aware of the woman's presence before. Ivy brandished her sword with her last bit of strength but the woman stopped her attack with a short sword drawn from her waist. The moment the blades clashed Ivy Blade wreathed on the short sword as it began to shed a dark and evil aura. Affected by the dark aura the trees surrounding them groaned in pain.

"What is happening!?"

"This sword bears a crack of Soul Edge," said the woman. "And your sword which resonates with mine is the child of the sword."

"The child of the evil sword... it may be. So your words and Astaroth's are true, this sword was completed with the power of Soul Edge. How stupid I am, me who in order to destroy Soul Edge entrusted the very power of the evil sword itself." Ivy replied as she was hit with her own uneasy suspicion.

"One more fact, the blood of the evil blade runs in your veins."

"Wha...?!"

The woman had now called not only her blade the child of the evil sword but Ivy as well. With her last remaining power Ivy attacked the woman. But the woman

parried her blade easily and jumped onto the ramparts.

"Once I fought with a man who bore an aura similar to yours. That man was the previous owner of the evil sword. Now, farewell."

"Wai... wait! What do you mean? You mean that my true father is...!"

Captain Cervantes, the immortal pirate?

She never said the name but she stared at the rampart where the woman once stood. Ivy then heard a heavy noise from inside the castle. The three trespassers must have been more than Astaroth expected. Ivy drew her exhausted body toward the dark castle with a new will.

If it's true I will cut him to pieces.

Knowing she was deceived is the only power that moves her now.

Epilogue:

"It... Shouldn't..."

Through her battles suspicion changed to certainty. Despite the death of the demon her blade still held the breath of life.

But now the source of its undead life was cursed blood running through Ivy's body.

However she accepted the curse without hesitation.

"I have always felt this to be true, but now that I know the truth I am relieved..."

Now a new unholy quest calls her soul.

=====
=====

3.1.11 Chapter XI:

Name
Hwang Sung Kyung

Weapon
Chinese Sword

Weapon Name
Blue Thunder

Style
Hwang's Long Blade

Age
28

Birth Date
Aug 8

Family

Parents deceased. Master
Seung Han Myong

Birth Place
Chi-Ri San, Lee Dynasty Korea

Height
5 foot 7 inches

Weight
137 lbs

Blood Type
AB

Hwang - Patriot's Burning Soul

During his quest for Soul Edge "the sword of salvation"; Hwang heard a terrible rumor that his beloved homeland would soon fall under attack from a neighboring country.

He immediately abandoned his honored quest and returned home. During his return he found his master's daughter Seung Mina and brought her home with him. Once home he returned to the Coastal Defense Force and served under the direction command of Navy Admiral Lee Sun Shin. Soon a rumor spread that Mina had run away from home yet again. This troubled Hwang but he knew he could not forsake his duty protecting his beloved country.

Burdened with his worries over Mina's safety and his impatience with the attack foe's cowardly tactics he eventually lost his inner calm. At last he made a horrible tactical mistake chasing a small pirate ship and many lives under his command were lost.

Admiral Lee Sun Shin summoned Hwang and dismissed Hwang's rank as commander of the Coastal Defense Force. And thus the Admiral returned Hwang to the honorable quest of seeking the sword of salvation.

Admiral Lee Sun Shin was a good friend of both Seung Han Myong and Hwang and sympathized with their concern for Seung Mina. So Admiral Lee Sun Shin privately requested Hwang search for Mina in the name of "the quest for the sword of salvation".

Hwang understood the admiral's order and obeyed without the slightest protest. Once again Hwang's soul leaves for the west.

Epilogue:

The legendary "Sword of Salvation".
The harsh reality was that the blade was pure evil and drove the soul mad.

Injured during the battle of the sword's birth Hwang was rescued by Mina.
"I am independent, am I not?"
"Indeed... Thank you."

"We shouldn't rely on the legends. We will defend

our homeland by our own hands."

The incandescent patriots set sail for the sea of battle.
Their people and homeland still needed their protection.
From now unto eternity they
will be the pride of their great nation.

=====
=====

3.1.12 Chapter XII:

Name	Yoshimitsu
Weapon	Katana
Weapon Name	Yoshimitsu
Style	Manji Ninjutsu
Age	Unknown
Birth Date	Unknown
Family	Unknown. Clan has perished
Birth Place	Unknown
Height	5 foot 7 inches
Weight	126 lbs
Blood Type	O

Yoshimitsu - The First Mechanized Ninja

In a time forgotten, there was a village of ninja, called the Manji clan, hidden away in the forests at the base of Mt. Fuji.

One day, a lord who sought the power of the Manji clan invited its chief to his castle. Due to his advanced age the clan's chief sent the strongest warrior of the clan on behalf of him. As expected, the lord requested the allegiance of the Manji clan. But the Manji clan preferred to remain hidden in these troubled times and refused to join in the era's petty wars. After a few days stay at the castle, the fighter politely denied the lord's request and returned to his village.

Upon his return he found his beloved village in ruins. The lord had prepared an army in anticipation of the clan's refusal to serve him. The reason the lord had

stalled his request and forced Yoshimitsu to stay at the castle was to buy time for his ruthless ambush.

"Either they shall serve me or I will strike down every last one of them! They are too powerful to remain uncontrolled. Destroy the survivor as well, though he may be the clans strongest fighter he is but one alone."

As the only remaining member of his once proud clan, he tried to devise a plan to avenge the deaths of his beloved clansmen as he fought off attacks from the lord's men. But he knew he could never match the lord's strength alone. His plan for revenge failed and in the lord's brutal counter attack he lost his right hand. All he could manage with his artificial hand was escape into a secret underground water vein only his clan knew about. Days of drifting in the cold and dark cavern reminded him of a tale of the ultimate weapon said to exist across the seas.

"With this weapon of legend I could crush all my enemies! I never believed this tale in the past, but now I feel it may be the only way left for me!"

Unable to shake the thoughts from his mind, he left to the west in his quest for the Soul Edge. During his travels, he heard the rumor of the Azure Knight and saw the remains and tragedies the knight had caused. He felt the despair, hatred, and desires for revenge born from the knight's evil and thought, "I can never give up my quest for revenge, but what is the difference between the lord and I, or the Azure Knight? What will be left after my bloody quest for revenge? Is this what the souls of my clan desire?"

Something in the man called Yoshimitsu began to change.

Epilogue:

"Taste my blade hell spawn!"
Yoshimitsu's silver blade
brought down the demonic sword.

However a spark from the demon sword
struck Yoshimitsu's blade and it began
to shed a strange aura.

"Has my sword been possessed by evil?
NEVER! IN MY NAME I WILL CONTROL THIS EVIL!"

He gathered money and food
for poor and helpless people.

The good name spread throughout the land.
Many great heroes sought his good name.

=====
=====

3.1.13 Chapter XIII:

Name
Lizard Man

Weapon
Short Sword & Small Shield

Weapon Name
Xi Sword & Game Shield

Style
Unknown

Age
3

Birth Date
Unknown

Family
Unknown. There are many
similar creatures

Birth Place
Unknown

Height
6 foot

Weight
190

Blood Type
Unknown

Lizardman/Plumeria - Jasper Scales of Shudder

In his worries over the "Man Made Demon" Soul Edge, Hephaestus gave many mortals sacred oracles and ordered the destruction of the blade. He appointed a total of twenty-four mortals in order of the Greek alphabet. Each of their origins were unique, from the captain of the royal knights to the daughter of a baker, yet each of their spirits were the same. Each was pious with all their soul and could hear the voices of the gods.

Among the chosen few was a man named Aeon Calcos. Born in Sparta under the occupation of the Ottoman Empire he was a powerful knight gifted in the art of swordplay. Once he received the holy oracle he wandered the earth in search of the "Man Made Demon" Soul Edge.

One day he was wondering a vast desert of death. His sight was fading and the harsh sands parched his mouth. "My lord, my guardian, the God of War, why do you abandon me?"

In the sandstorm he lost his sight as his remaining senses began to fade...

When he had recovered his consciousness he found himself lying on a bed in a dim room. He then learned that a village man of an oasis found him buried in the sands and saved him from death. Since the village was frequently ravaged by burglars he chose to repay their kindness by teaching them the art of swordplay. However, only a week had passed and the village was attacked by the Evil Seed before he could repay their kindness. The Evil Seed covered the oasis in a sphere of light and showered pure evil onto the village!

Months had passed and a caravan crossing the desert carried a rumor of an oasis drenched in blood and a beserker raining terror. In fact, since the mysterious night of lights, many a caravan had been lost in the desert. The rumor spread

throughout the desert and eventually reached the ears of the Grand Priest, Kyumm
mrl py eltzk "the Guardian of the Normal Stream" (Py glkks estes mnz), whose
shine lay deeply hidden within the earth.

The Grand Priest had plans for the berserker. Soon after losing his soul to the
Evil Seed, Aeon the berserker was captured and brought before the Grand Priest.
The Grand Priest saw that even despite being bound to a huge boulder with
several thick chains the beserker still violently resisted. "Splendid
Material... this will be a royal subject once the synthetic experiment is a
success."

Days of madness had passed and once the ritual was completed Aeon was born anew.
His limbs were given newfound power, his body was covered with scales, a
reptile's tail hung behind him, and the head of a lizard rested on his shoulders.
The madness swept away his memories, but his body remembered how to fight. The
Grand Priest was pleased with the results and decided to "educate" him
thoroughly. And thus Aeon the sacred fighter was transformed into a strong and
loyal slave of the Grand Priest.

When the time came, the Grand Priest ordered Lizardman to search for the demon
sword. And so his three years of living in the shadows came to an end with his
appearance at the port of India. How could one hope to find the affection and
nobility which lay within his soul since it was masked by his present eyes of
emptiness...

Epilogue:

Inferno sank into the abyss with
the weight of the cursed souls.

The flood of power, pure
madness and a passion for destruction...
Wounded in the great battle,
Lizardman approached another nightmare.
He roared in desire, a new quest of destruction and
massacre filled his mind.

As if called by the roar creatures
from the underworld gathered under the moonlight.
He and his cold-blooded minions
began a new hunt.
Soon their prey will...

=====
=====

3.1.14 Chapter XIV:

Name
Siegfried Schtauffen

Weapon
Zweihander

Weapon Name
Requiem

Style
Self-Taught

Age
19

Birth Date
Feb. 6

Family
Mother - Margaret. He killed his
own father Frederick

Birth Place
Holy Roman Empire

Height
5 foot 5 inches

Weight
110 lbs

Blood Type
A

Siegfried - A Soul in Purgatory

After the Soul Edge devoured a great number of strong souls Siegfried was able to use it to resurrect his father Frederick. He quickly realized this resurrection was nothing more than an illusion created by his weak mind. Perplexed by the illusion he created, he wondered, "Is there any hope for redemption?"

She lived in a small town in Germany. With both her husband and son missing, her life was completely barren. But on this day a youth stood in front of her house. For the first time since he had killed his father, he returned to his mother Margaret. As his hand raised to knock the door he heard words of prayer from within the house. His body froze as he listened to the sound of his mother's voice praying that her son's soul may see peace.

"I am unworthy to see my dear mother now, I cannot return until I have settled everything," he decided.

"Mom, I met dad," were the only words he muttered as he turned his back and ran away before his mother could notice.

The boy had now grown into a youth and he left the town of his childhood with a refreshed will. The knight left to put down the flames of unholy hellfire that had spread throughout the world. The sun had set and all that remained in front of him was a dim road of uncertainty.

Epilogue:

Having conquered the evil within,
the knight stared where the wind fell.

Memories of childhood,

an imposing figure of his father,
the beginning of his madness and the black wind...

Sieg, where have you been for the last three years?"
"I'll tell you later... someday."

He found some faces he knew from the past,
and some faces new to him.
He found that the black wind had never lulled.
Demons are attack!" "Sally, men!!"
And now a new wind began to blow.

=====
=====

3.1.15 Chapter XV:

Name
Rock

Weapon
Battle-Axe

Weapon Name
Apocalypse

Style
Self-Taught

Age
38

Birth Date
December 14

Family
Parents missing. Bring up
Native American orphan Bangoo

Birth Place
Born in London, Raise in the
New Continent

Height
5 foot 9 inches

Weight
187 lbs

Blood Type
Unknown

Rock - The Trembling Earth

The battle had ended. They had fought each other in complete misunderstanding.
During their fight they realized this and ceased their conflict.

Lit by the parting beams of sunlight in the fading dusk the female fighter named
Sophitia said, "I felt hesitation in your attacks. You have someone that needs
your protection, don't you?"

He crossed the great ocean to find the past. With no memories of his parents he searched for Soul Edge, the only possible cure, and continued his quest. Yet Sophitia's words hit his heart. He longed for his one and only family, the Native American orphan that he had left behind, Bangoo.

After due consideration Rock chose not past but present. His quest was over. Rock bid farewell to Sophitia and returned to the west. As he set sail he saw the light rising into the sky above the continent as if it were bidding farewell to him. When the light faded the earth was hidden by the darkness of night.

After a year of travelling the vast earth Rock returned to his life with Bangoo. He knew he had made the right choice, because he never wanted Bangoo to experience the loneliness he used to feel. He decided to stay with Bangoo until Bangoo had become a fully independent man.

One day a rumor that mysterious lizard-like humanoids were wandering the land disturbed their peaceful existence. Rock tried to avoid the matter and focus on keeping peace with Bangoo but the monsters attacked Rock without warning on a moonless night. Their target was non other than Rock "the White Giant" himself! Rock mowed down every single lizardman with his giant battle-axe. Dimly aware that their proud hard scales were powerless against Rock's giant axe, the lizardmen disappeared into the darkness. As the silence grew Rock returned home and found his home destroyed and Bangoo missing! The lizardmen knew they could never capture Rock so they kidnapped Bangoo to lure him! Even though he knew it was a trap, he couldn't avoid falling into the lizardmen's plans. He left on his quest chasing the trail of the lizardmen, but once he reached the European continent he lost their trail. Rock now wandered Europe trying to find Bangoo. "I have one whom I must protect."

It had been three years since he had heard the words that made him decide to be the boy's guardian.

Epilogue:

Through bloody battles Rock rescued Bangoo and return to mother nature.

Bangoo lifted Rock's axe and staggered a little and then smiled, "Don't worry Rock. Look, I can handle it."

Years have passed and Bangoo had grown up to be a strong youth.

Each time he sees a great cloud in the sky he remembers Rock's words. "You will leave someday like me to go forth for yourself and find your soul."

=====
=====

3.1.16 Chapter XVI:

Name
Seung Mina

Weapon
Ancestral Zanba-to

Weapon Name
Scarlet Thunder

Style
Seung's Long Blade and
Ling-Sheng Su Style Rod

Age
19

Birth Date
November 3

Family
Father: Seung Han Myong,
Mother and younger brother
deceased

Birth Place
Chili-San, Lee Dynasty Korea

Height
5 foot 4 inches

Weight
106 lbs

Blood Type
A

Seung Mina - Heart and Soul Girl

Seung Mina was now facing her toughest opponent ever. She left home (by pushing her father to the side) and chased after the sword of salvation, "Soul Edge" but before she got anywhere in her quest she was found by Hwang and taken home. Seung Han Myong, her father and teacher in the ways of the blade, ordered Mina into rigorous training as punishment. While on the other hand Han Myong took an even greater liking to Hwang and began arranging a marriage between Hwang and Mina. But Hwang was never home since his volunteer duty in the Coastal Defense Force kept him away from Chili-san most of the time. Mina would never be a quiet girl and after experiencing the freedom from her previous adventure she felt ill at ease. She finally lost her last shred of patience when the prodigal son of the wealthy Kim family, a pupil of the Seung School, proposed to her.

"I can't take this anymore!" she screamed and flew from the house again.

"Now where should I go? I want to volunteer for the Coastal Defense Force but they've flatly denied me because I am a woman. Moreover Hwang and father's best friend Admiral Lee Sun Shin are members of the Force so the instant I go there they will be forced to go back home. Then why don't I begin the quest for the sword of salvation again? Yeah, that seems like a good idea! If I get the sword surely the Force will accept me! I shall prove my ability by getting the Soul Edge! The father and Hwang will be forced to recognize my independence." Mina mused out loud. And with this decision she began her renewed quest immediately.

After a few months Mina finally reached western soil. One day Mina heard a rumor

about a female fighter in town, who was searching for the Soul Edge, Mina's natural instincts lead her right to the female fighter. The tall female fighter was about to leave town but she told Mina she was searching for the demonic blade Soul Edge and the source of her power. Mina felt uneasy that the female fighter called the sword of salvation "the demonic blade".

"Oh? If you don't know even that much you should stay away from the blade and sit at home, pretty baby.", were the words the female fighter taunted Mina with.

Mina was upset the female fighter called her a baby and she didn't care if she was in the middle of the street or among a large crowd she challenged the woman with her Zanbato. Although she wasn't overpowered she was clearly overwhelmed by her opponent's mysterious wriggling sword. She fought her best against this strange opponent but the final result was obvious.

After the female fighter left the crowd broke up and left Mina standing alone in a dim street. The sun set into evening and the windows began reflecting the warm light within the rooms.

"My art of the blade was useless against her... does this mean I have neglected my training?" Mina pondered.

The art of the Zanbato was her only confidence in this journey. She stood in shock as her mind was denied everything by this one defeat.

"Interesting duel! Thanks for amusing me" a voice bellowed in the distance.

The voice hit Mina and she regained her focus. As she looked around she saw an Asian man standing on the side of the street where the crowd once was. The man looked in his thirties or forties, perhaps Chinese and very drunk. A rod in the man's hands drew Mina's attention. At a slight glance it looked like a mere stick but surely it was a rod and moreover it was very used.

"The sword of that lady was a rare thing indeed. Indeed it was a good lesson for you to learn not to challenge so boldly wasn't it? Luckily you are young so you can become stronger, eh' baby?" the man muttered.

After being treated like a child for the second time today she attacked the man without thinking. However her Zanbato never reached him. He didn't parry it or guard himself with his rod but instead he simply stopped the blade by grabbing the Zanbato by the rod section.

"Like I said. You should know your opponent's ability before you attack", the man smiled.

"You also said since I am young I could become stronger. Will you teach me how to fight? I don't care if it is the rod or other weapons" Mina rebutted in what may have been her strongest bluff ever.

The seasons came and went and Mina continued to train herself under the guidance of the man.

"I know I will encounter strong fighters like that female fighter in my quest for the Soul Edge. If I seek the blade then I need to become stronger." These were the words that would race through her mind as she continued her training.

This was her sole motivation to continue to push herself. The man paid little attention to Mina's application and instead taught her genuinely because of her strong convictions. Day by day her skill grew. Even though the man was drunk and his appearance was a terrible mess his fighting style and mastery of the rod had

something very noble and traditional about it.

And now a full year had passed in Mina's training. And then one day the man went out to buy some alcohol and never returned. A sadden Mina found this note from the man at midnight:

"I am not worthy to officially teach you the way of the rod. But with your talent you need not master it fully, just combine what I have taught with your original art of the long blade. There is nothing more to teach you, go forth and complete your quest. - From Kong"

"Or so the story goes... at least that is what I remember about her. She reminded me of a girl from my past... they were both the same age I guess. I taught her the art of the rod for no real reason but I found myself surprised at how quickly she mastered it. She needed merely a year to master the basic techniques. She was an honest girl, so honest that she couldn't keep her thoughts in her mind. I think you should consider becoming more frank like this girl... don't you Chief Commander Hwang?" Drunk as usual, Kong both a master of the rod and new recruit in the Coastal Defense Force, talked with Hwang in a very frank and casual manner. Hwang's mind was still thinking about his failure a few days earlier when he had given chase to the Ryukyu pirate ship and lost many of his men. He heard Kong's tale without truly listening to it until the girl who Kong instructed in the way of rod drew his attention. This girl sounded like...

"Pardon me, Chief Commander Hwang. Sir Lee Sun Shin summons you immediately." Suddenly a voice from outside the room called Hwang. Hwang stood in reply and forced himself to stop thinking about Mina.

"My duty is to the Coastal Defense Force" he persuaded himself as he went into Admiral Lee Sun Shin's quarters.

Epilogue:

With her remaining power
Mina brought down her final enemy.
All her strength gone she collapsed from exhaustion.
"You rest before our homeland is saved?"
"Oh, Hwang..."

Mina's face turned red.
Complete exhausted, how could she hope
to escape his strong arms?

A far more dangerous enemy awaited her at home.
A proposal from the prodigal son of the Kim family.
Please marry me."
"Unto you I will give a hundred cows."

"Oops..."
"I can't wait to run away from home again!"

=====
=====

Name
Edge Master

Weapon
All weapons

Style
Any Style

Age
Unknown

Birth Date
January 1

Family
Living with Kilik for three years

Birth Place
Unknown

Height
5 foot 9 inches

Weight
176 lbs

Blood Type
O

Edge Master - The Master of Blades

Time flows through all, the mind of a single being holds no measure compared to the long stream of history. There are few that understand this truth

Nobody knows his place of birth, when and how he became the great master of the Ling Sheng Su Temple or even his true name. Each new chief of the Ling Sheng Su Temple simply knows he is well versed in weapons and descends from the mountains to initiate the successors of the three treasures and teach them the secret arts of the temple. These facts alone show he has lived an extremely long time but none of the previous chiefs or successors of the treasures and secret arts know the truth about him since he never talks about himself.

And now a new young successor is training under him. Three years have passed since the night of horror at the Ling Sheng Su Temple. Kilik is now the successor of the Kali-Yuga but the Evil Seed possesses both him and the rod. Kilik has mastered most of the secret arts of the Ling Sheng Su style rod and the master has prepared a final trial to help Kilik resist the Evil Seed in his body.

"Go west and find the evil sword "Soul Edge", the seed of all this chaos. There you will find your purpose and everything will be clear."

After Kilik left the master devoted his mind to deep meditation. When his thoughts became clear he stood up. It might be worth challenging the stream of history again. It might be nice to believe one can cut their path through destiny and create the future. He took his long trained weapons and left for the west.

He too might rest if the evil sword "Soul Edge" is destroyed; though the real

answer lays well in his mind

Epilogue:

"Finally, I am back. The journey was painful beyond imagination!"
"Well... Kilik seems to have become strong. I'll try 'that' on him."

"Kilik!" "Yes, Master."
"Wait here a moment."

"Master! What happened to your... body!?"
"I'll teach you the secret art to
control the evil within.
This is 'control the evil by using the evil'."

"Do you think you can defeat me?
Prepare yourself Kilik! Ready? Kyiaaaaaah!!"

=====
=====

3.2 Stages of History (Website)

Valentine Mansion

With his vast wealth from the profit of trades Count Valentine used his wealth and lifeline of personal contacts to built his great mansion. It was design purely modern and the near daily parties held in the ballroom and its expensive rose marble floors were proof of the Valentine's prosperity. However the Valentine's eventually fell into ruin as Count Valentine was possess by the mysteries of the Soul Edge. He did anything to obtain the sword and scattered his wealth. The Valentine's wealth vanished, the cheerful laughter from the grand halls disappeared and the servants and maids left. What came into Isabella's mind as she stood in the dark and empty room?

Ming Emperor's Villa

This grand garden was designed to be the Ming Emperor's summer home. It made perfect use of the natural landscape giving visitors the beautiful scenery of the four seasons. Aside from the Emperor and his family only the royal guards, including Xianghua, were permitted to enter the house. When Xianghua received the order to search for the Soul Edge she visited the garden for the first time. The garden, as if celebrating her departure, was in full bloom.

Remain in the Desert

The prosperous oasis cities in the shirt of the Taklimakan were important relay stations for caravans crossing the Silk Road. Merchants rested and enjoyed these cities as they chased the profits of trade. This remain construct in a cave deep within a valley lay but one day travel by wagon from a near by oasis city. Rumor has it that a rich merchant fond of life

away from the rush of city life built this remain. As if to prove the rumor the halls and floors are decorated with expensive lazurite and malachite.

Ostrheinsburg Castle

This large castle stands deep with the woods of Mittelbirge in Germany. Constructed by Sir Stefan, famous as an independent knight, this castle consisted of a quadruple fortress and has been proud of its impregnability. However Sir Stefan had been killed in a war a few years ago, after the lord's death the remaining soldiers were executed, and the crying women and children were killed or taken away as prisoners. After thorough plundering the once proud castle is nothing more than a ruin of death that none dare visit.

Hoko-ji Temple

Hoko-ji Temple was constructed in Kyoto (capitol at the time) in the 17th year of Tensho (1589) under the proposal of Hideyoshi Toyotomi. The temple's was officially created to pray for the peace and stability of the nation but it had an hidden agenda of "katana-gari" (Ed. Katana-gari was the sword hunting policy to take swords away from people other than nobles. Until then there was no set border between samurai (soldiers), sho-nin (merchants) and no-min (farmers). Thus people like Mitsurugi, who were once a peasants, could take up the sword. Once the policy went into effect farmers could not bear katana and thus the caste system became more apparent.) to prevent the constant rioting of farmers. In a secret underground hall there is standing Buddha statue 24 meters tall set within the center of a huge fusui-ban (Ed. Fusui-ban is an octagonal disk used for fortune telling based on fusui, a type of Chinese secret magic (or logic depending on the translation). Fusui literally means "winds and waters", and its core purpose is to read the stream of "ki" in nature and control them.) which Yin-Yang masters would consult in their advice to Hideyoshi and his strategies for conquering the country.

However in construction of the great hall Hideyoshi cut down a several thousand-year-old cedar tree on Yakushima Island and used the weapons collected from the katana-gari for iron for the huge Buddha statue. In ancient times the Japanese word "ki" meaning wood and another word "ki" meaning spirit were on and the same. People believe wood and trees had holy spirits and the word "kodama" literally means "spirit of a tree" and now "echo". Thus by killing a great life to make the hall and using the statue forged from iron that had tasted the blood of men it was only natural that this place would bear the seeds of disaster as it shed its dark pulse.

In fact Hideyoshi drove the Yin-Yang masters out of temple in the 2nd year of the Bunroku when their fortune telling effected the Toyotomi Clan. It is also well known that the kanji carved on the great bell of the temple became the direct cause of the fall of the Toyotomi Clan. (Ed. The bell's creation was sponsored by the son of Hideyoshi (deceased by this time) and his mother Yodogimi under recommendation of Ieyasu Tokugawa (eventually the first shogun of the Edo Era, at the time he was a subject of Toyotomi, though he was equal in power to the lord). The eight kanji carved on the bell meant, "may the nation be in peace so lords and subjects may enjoy wealth". However the order of the kanji could also be translated as "cut Ieyasu in two piece, Toyotomi becomes the emperor and prospers forever". Though the Toyotomi Clan did not intend this, Ieyasu saw this as a curse of magic that wished the fall of the Tokugawa clan

and challenged the Toyotomi Clan formally. Thus began the Winter Campaign of the Osaka-jo Castle, followed by the Summer Campaign and ending with the fall of the Toyotomi Clan.)

Taki came to this temple to have a decisive battle with the ghost Gel-o-fury, which had broken the seals of the bamboo forest with its newfound power from the Evil Seed. Outside the temple Toki's assassins awaited the outcome, how could Taki hope to survive this situation?

Water Vein

Japan is a lush and green land and large veins such as this one gather the snow and rain from the ground. These veins form a network throughout Japan much like the veins in the human body.

It is said that it takes one year for water to dive into the earth one meter. Thus the water in this deep vein has travel for many years and is deathly cold and ghostly clear. The soft pale blue stones create an illusion amount the walls broke only by patches of warm green moss.

Newly empowered by the Evil Seed the vile ghost Gel-o-Fury shattered the seals in the bamboo forest and made its way into this vein. Taki challenged the ghost in several times in this complex cave. Toki's assassins chasing Taki could not resist Gel-o-Fury's aura and were absorbed into the great ghost. As Gel-o-Fury grew in power Taki became convinced the ghost was planning to exit the vein in Kyoto within the Buddha Hall of the Hoko-ji Temple. She went ahead and planned to ambush the ghost in the hall.

Money Pit

The Money Pit once proud of its impregnable status faced a humbling conquering at the hands of an act of god. A terrible storm flooded most of the treasure stockyards and even the highest of stockyards could not escape. The highest among the stockyards bore the marble statue of the dead master Vercci, this was the final stand of the Money Pit and the place Voldo placed the coffin of the dead master and slowly gathered the remaining treasure into.

The Inundated Castle

Mitsurugi was a trusted mercenary in the base of Mori's Murakami Navy on the Noshima Island. Mitsurugi had been assigned defense of the Takamatsu-jo Castle at the front line of the Mori Army. The Takamatsu-jo Castle was centered in a marshy area and due to its geographical features considered impossible to seize. However a clever and resourceful Hideyoshi Hashiba constructed a 3-kilometer bank surrounding the castle to stop the flow of water and the Ashimori-gawa River then flooded the region.

Everything hung in the balance and thus without fear or hesitation Mitsurugi climbed a board a ship, faced an onslaught of arrows and rushed into battle.

Pure Training Spot

This Hindu temple was made in the 9th century and had been forgotten for many years. With its pure waters the place had a holy atmosphere that made it feel as if it was another world. The stone cave and the temple lay deep within India and the small caves that formed the lake like shape out of the river only broke the tranquil scene.

The mysterious old man that appeared in front of Kilik lives here in the small lodge on the hill like a hermit.

"Who could this great master be..."

His mind is full of questions Kilik trains himself everyday to control the evil within.

The Evil Shrine

This shrine is an underground construction for the great god of evil. It seems to be near a volcano since the grand hall is always filled with lava. In the center stands a triangle shaped alter where the grand priest "kymm mrl py eltzk" performs various ceremonies. This is also the place of Astaroth's creation and birth. The material of construction remains unknown. But by observing the surrounding statues vomiting lava one would think heat was the source of life. No one known if the original materials were from evil magic or human hands.

City of Water

The City of Water, also known of the pearl of Italy, is a maze palace on water constructed by connecting countless islands across a lagoon with over 400 bridges. During the Renaissance, Venice monopolized all the merchants' rights and with this power stretched its colonization into northeast Italy as it expanded into its golden age.

As a city it was adorned with gorgeous mansions, fine works of art, master pieces of architecture and it was heralded as a Mecca for intellectuals of the time. The people admired this city as if it was an illusion. Some came to the city chasing dreams; other attracted by its beautiful art and landscapes. And now Siegfried comes...

Indian Port

This was the Indian harbor Maxi visited to arrange goods.

In India the shore is a sacred place so a stair terrace allows for travel to the water. The terrace, which is called a 'ghat', leads to the town with its maze of house, temples and narrow pathways. Visitors unfamiliar with the town are notorious for getting lost. For Maxi this gray sea became a place of destiny where his sworn brother Kyam and shipmates slept. Maxi swore revenge on Astaroth as he stared at his ship in the distance sunken by Astaorth.

Shrine in the Air

The gods constructed a circular shrine atop a great sacred mountain. Legends say the gods created this shrine to defy themselves and as if to prove this legend the path to the shrine was a cascade of stairs that human feet could never step upon.

"If to gods do not wish us to enter the shrine of legend then we shall construct a second shrine for them to come to us."

There fore this second shrine stood next to the mountain. All who visited the shrine surrounded by clouds and divine light felt as if they were floating in air. What could have been the hopes and bows of people standing on this shrine looking at the circular shrine of legend in the distance? And of Sophitia...

The Colosseum

Here stands the remains of an ancient coliseum surrounded by canals. Evidence suggests it was once used at a theater as well as an arena since the royal boxes have epitaphs such as "dedicated by the holder of this grand event". It is estimated this theater can hold twenty thousand guests, which is about the same as the Megalopolis in Greece.

The players entered the coliseum by grand boats decorated with gold and silver and the winners were praised atop the alter of sacred fire in the center of the spectator seats.

Gap of the World

A desolate land created by Inferno, the fire of hell. This land is an illusion of time created by the awakening of Soul Edge's true form. It is also said to be a materialization of the pains and sufferings of the souls devoured by Soul Edge. But some that gaze upon this land only feel the beautiful fluttering colored lights dancing a rondo. . .

=====
=====

4. Soul Calibur Dreamcast

4.1 History/Profiles

4.1.00 Prologue (Manual)

Transcending time and space, an eternal tale of souls and swords...

Considered by some as a Hero's Sword or even the Sword of Immortality by others, rumors of the legendary sword Soul Edge spread throughout the world under its many guises.

Whatever its name, Soul Edge was without a doubt, a sword of gret evil.

The owner of the cursed sword was the dreaded pirate Cervantes, whose reign of terror ended after his defeat at the hands of Sophitia, the sacred warrior, and Taki, the demon huntress.

However Siegfried, who was searching for a sword of vengeance, stumbled upon Soul Edge which was now without a host and on the verge of tearing itself apart

because of its uncontrollable evil energy. When he grasped the sword, the nightmare began once again...

...The Evil Seed, radiating from Soul Edge, appeared as a column of white light that shot up into the sky and scattered seeds of misfortune across the world.

Several years after the incident, rumors of an azure knight spread across Europe. In his grotesquely misshapen hand was a giant one-eyed sword. This myserious knight decimated villages and cities as he made his way towards the Black Forest. A fearsome figure to behold, this knight was said to even surpass Cervantes in his evil...

Kilik
Destiny Awakened

Fightin Style Secret Art of Ling Sheng Su Style Rod
Weapon Rod-Kali-Yuga

Kilik is a chosen heir of the Kali-Yuga, one of the three treasures of the Ling Sheng Su Temple. His fighting moves take advantage of the rod's long reach and have a wide area of efficacy, enabling him to keep enemies at a distance.

Xianghua
Flower in the Breeze

Fighting Style Sword arts passed on from her mother
Weapon Chinese Sword- Krita-Yuga

Xianghua is on a quest to find Soul Edge as a member of th Ming Emperor's search party masquerading as a Chinese opera troop. Xianghua's elegant fighting moves based on her nimble footwork help to catch her enemies off guard.

Maxi
Dandy of the South Seas

Fighting Style Shissen Karihadi
Weapon Nunchaku- Fatibal

Maxi is the young leader of a carefree crew of pirates sailing the high seas. Maxi can turn any battle to his advantage by using his six ever-changing stances to confuse the enemy and attack blows to throw off the enemy's attack timing.

Nightmare
Azure Nightmare

Fighting Style Memories of Soul Edge
Weapon Soul Edge

Siegfried was transformed into Nightmare by the demonic powers of Soul Edge. The evil sword held in his grotesque hand is capable of slashing through anything with one fatal stroke.

Ivy
Twistin Blade of Solitude

Fighting Style Unrelated Link
Weapon Snake Sword- Ivy Blade

Ivy is a platinum-haired warrior on a mission to destroy Soul Blade. Her Ivy Blade has the longest reach of all the weapons. It functions as a sword in close combat, and transforms into a whip for mid and long distance attacks.

Astaroth
A Soldier of the Heretics

Fighting Style Gyulkus
Weapon Giant Ax- Kulutues

Astaroth is the creation of a heretical order called Fygul Cestemus. His great strength enables him to wield a giant ax easily, and his blows are devastating. Astaroth's close combat body throws also pack a lot of damage as well.

Heishiro Mitsurugi
Mercenary in a Wartime Age

Fighting Style Tenpu-Kosai-Ryu Kai
Weapon Katana- Shishi-oh

Mitsurugi is a samurai who is known as "the Demon" for his fighting style on the battlefield. He mastered the art of the sword in order to triumph over firearms. Mitsurugi can approach the enemy in an instant and attack with a single deadly strike.

Taki
Shadow Huntress of Demons

Fighting Style Muso-Battoh-Ryu
Weapon Ninja Swords: Rekki-
Maru & Mekki-Maru

Taki is a woman dedicated to destroying demons. Her strenght is in close quarter combat, where her special moves and skills are the most effective. Her beloved sword Rekki-Maru and the mysterious phantom sword Mekki-Maru accompany her on the quest to destroy Soul Edge.

Sophitia Alexandra
Renewal of the Vow

Fighting Style Athenian
Weapon Short Sword- Omega Sowrd
Small Shield- Elk Shield

Sophitia is a warrior who received an oracle to destroy Soul Edge Hephaestus, the god of fire and smithery. The thrust attacks from her sword as well as shield attacks are extremely powerful. With weapons forged by her betrothed, she embarks on her journey to destroy Soul Edge once again.

Voldo
Hell's Guardian

Fighting Style Self-taught
Weapon Katar x 2- Shame & Blame

Voldo is the dreaded guardian of the Money Pit. His acute senses developed through years of living in darkness enable him to attack an opponent even with his back turned. His unique and strange movements can confound the enemy.

=====
=====

Prologue (Game)

SOULCALIBUR- Prologue Chapter 1

The dread pirate Captain Cervantes and his ship the "Adrian" struck fear throughout the entire Atlantic during his reign of terror.

It all began when Cervantes obtained the evil twin swords, Soul Edge. Under its demonic influence, Cervantes slew his entire crew and those unfortunate enough to be in a nearby Spanish port town.

With Soul Edge's twisted desires temporarily satiated with the feast of souls provided by the bloody massacre, Cervantes and Soul Edge took to the ruins of the "Black Tail Inn" to enter a long sleep in preparation for the birth of the "Child of the Evil Sword."

--- Prologue Chapter 2

Over the course of the next twenty years, tales of the evil swords spread throughout the world and the truth about them was distorted. It was considered by some as the "Sword of Salvation" or even the "Ultimate Weapon" by others. And then there were those destined to seek Soul Edge for their own personal ends.

--- Prologue Chapter 3

The chosen few who reached Soul Edge, either by choice or by luck, cursed their misfortune as the evil swords devoured their souls.

--- Prologue Chapter 4

However, there was one woman who defied this fate...She was the sacred warrior Sophitia sent by a divine oracle from Hephaestus, the god of fire and smithery. She succeeded in shattering one of the evil swords while engaged in a fierce battle to the death with the pirate Cervantes.

--- Prologue Chapter 5

Yet her victory came at a price, for she was gravely wounded by fragments of the shattered sword. With the destruction of one half of Soul Edge, Cervantes became enraged as if a part of his body had been destroyed. He was about to take her life when Taki, the "Shadow Huntress of Demons," appeared to stop him.

--- Prologue Chapter 6

Although his equilibrium was broken due to the loss of one blade, Cervantes fought Taki with murderous rage, but lost to the demon hunter in the end.

--- Prologue Chapter 7

Taki obtained a fragment of the shattered Soul Edge, and with her mission complete,

Departed with the badly injured Sophitia whose life hung by a thread.

--- Prologue Chapter 8

Siegfried, the "Innocent Darkside," came to the Spanish port town to seek the legendary "Sword of Vengeance." Yet all that he found there was what appeared to be the corpse of a pirate captain. The sword clutched in the dead pirate's hand caught his attention, and so Siegfried approached the corpse...

--- Prologue Chapter 9

...But then, the corpse suddenly rose amid flames of hellfire. It seemed as if evil itself had possessed Cervantes' body to become corporeal.

--- Prologue Chapter 10

Mortal combat ensued. Although the Zweihander was too large to be held by the hands of the boy, he swung the giant sword effortlessly. The eyes of the boy were filled with madness as the sword cut the air with a terrific roar.

When the battle was over, only the burned out remains of the pirate's corpse was left. In the bloodstained hands of the boy was his Zweihander, broken at its hilt. The image of Soul Edge enveloped in hellfire burned fiercely in the boy's eyes...

--- Prologue Chapter 11

Soul Edge had lost its host and was on the verge of tearing itself apart. As if guided by Soul Edge, the youth with th dark soul reached out to it...

--- Prologue Chapter 12

That night, a mysterious light was seen on the Spanish shoreline. A white column of light pierced the clouds and scattered throughout the sky. Witnesses of this event had no idea that the beautiful sight they beheld was the dissemination of the Evil Seed that would bring misfortune to the world.

And so history turned its page anew...

These tales you are about to witness occurred in the sixteenth century.

=====
=====

4.1.01 Kilik

Kilik (Character Exhibit)

- Destiny Awakened -

Weapon: Rod
Weapon Name: Kali-Yuga (rod)
 Dvapara Yuga (mirror)
Style: Secret Art of Ling Sheng Su
 Style Rod
Age: 19
Birth Date: February 9
Family: Unknown
Birthplace: Raised in Ling Sheng Su
 Temple, Ming Empire
 Birthplace unknown.
Height: 5' 6"
Weight: 139 lbs.
Blood Type: A

Kilik, raised at the Ling-Sheng Su Temple deep within China, was chosen to inherit a rod called "Kali-Yuga" after many years of training. This weapon was one of the three sacred treasures of the temple.

However, the Evil Seed had rained down upon the temple and caused its people to lose their sanity and a blood bath ensued.

Kilik was able to keep his sanity under the protection of the "Dvapara-Yuga," but was forced to defend himself against those who were under the spell of the Evil Seed. In doing so, he killed his sworn sister and others dear to him.

When Kilik regained consciousness, the old

man who saved him told him the truth. Kilik and the Kali-Yuga were both still under the demonic influence of the Evil Seed. The only thing that separated Kilik from madness was the Dvapara-Yuga slung around his shoulder. And the source of all this evil was the demonic blade Soul Edge!

Kilik trained under the old master, and after learning how to control the evil within himself and the Kali-Yuga, embarked on a quest to purify himself and his weapon.

---Weapon

Kilik- Kali-Yuga (Rod) & Dvapara-Yuga
(Mirror)

Kilik's Kali-Yuga and the Dvapara-Yuga were two of Ling-Sheng Su Temple's three sacred treasures. When the Evil Seed corrupted Kilik and Kali-Yuga with evil, the Dvapara-Yuga's power, along with Kilik's inner strength, were the only things that kept him from being completely possessed by evil.

If Kali-Yuga had fallen into the hands of someone else, this would have meant the creation of another weapon like Soul Edge.

Equipped with the rod that took the life of his sworn sister, and the mirror that she gave him along with her life, Kilik departed for the West to find answers for himself.

---Stage

Proving Grounds

This training area is near a Hindu temple located in a stone cavern of a mountain, deep in the heart of India. Pure water cascades downward from the rocky mountain's waterfalls. The beautiful, clear water that flows through this place evokes an otherworldly, if not holy atmosphere.

The mysterious old man who appeared before Kilik lives here in a small shack like a hermit.

Kilik has come here again to focus on his training regimen in the hopes of taming the demons that dwell within him.

---Voice

Listen to the beat of my soul!
This rod will be your doom!
You want more punishment?
Master, I won't let you down!
I'm done with you!
Give up!
Evil one, begone!
Damn you!
Take this!
Ready!

---Ending

Despite losing its physical form, the demonic blade still burned fiercely and prepared to scatter itself throughout the world again.

Kilik chanted quietly but with resolve, "Om Vajradharma Kilik."

The Dvapara-Yuga that protected him split apart and extinguished the evil flames.

Over the course of many intense battles, Kilik mastered the skill to tame the evil within him.

Not one to rest on his laurels, Kilik subjects himself to more intensive training.

Here, at the place where heaven and earth meet, his eyes reflect nothing but the clear blue of the boundless sky.

=====
=====

4.1.02 Xianghua

- Flower in the Breeze -

Weapon: Chinese Sword
Weapon Name: Krita-Yuga
Style: Sword arts passed on from her mother.
Age: 16
Birthdate: April 2
Family: Father is deceased, according to her mother.
Mother passed away 5 years ago.
Birthplace: Ming Empire
Height: 5'
Weight: 101 lbs.
Blood Type: B

The Ming Emperor was irritated by the lack of progress in the quest for Soul Edge, the "Hero's Sword," so he ordered his royal guards to join the search. Xinghua was a member of this group.

The guards masqueraded as a traveling Chinese opera troupe to avoid suspicion about their true mission. Xinghua, trained in martial arts since childhood by her mother, was chosen to be the star attraction of the troupe.

As she prepared for her journey, Xinghua recalled her mother's last words:

"You were born to complete an important task...Cut your path through an uncertain future!"

With her treasured keepsake sword in hand, Xianghua departed with the sense that the invisible forces of her destiny were pushing her onward.

---Weapon

Xianghua- Krita-Yuga

Xianghua's treasure was her mother's keepsake Chinese Sword. Whenever Xianghua gazed upon the Krita-Yuga, she recalled her mother's final words: "You were born to complete an important task...Cut your path through an uncertain future!"

With her treasured sword in hand, Xianghua embarked on her quest, feeling the invisible forces of destiny pushing her onward.

The Krita-Yuga, along with Kali-Yuga and Dvapara-Yuga formed the treasured trinity of the Ling Sheng Su Temple. Separated for over 10 years, surely something momentous would come to pass when the three treasures were brought together again.

---Stage

Emperor's Garden

This garden was constructed as a part of the Ming Emperor's summer retreat. Its design emphasizes harmony with the surrounding natural landscape and provides visitors with a beautiful view throughout the four seasons.

With the exception of the Emperor and his family, only the royal guards including Xianghua have permission to set foot inside the retreat. When Xianghua received her order to search for Soul Edge, that was the first time she set her eyes on this garden. When she entered the garden, the petals from the flowering trees danced gently in the warm breeze like confetti thrown to wish her good fortune in her quest.

---Voice

I've got to win!
I said no mercy!
That's all there is to it!
Thanks again!
Justice will prevail! Just kidding!
Ahem! How's that?!
You're finished!
You're mine!
Here's a freebie!
I got you!

---Ending

The Krita-Yuga she wielded revealed its true form as if it heeded the call of destiny.

The sword gave her unparalleled strength and in return, Xianghua channeled her pure spirit through it.

The interminable battle came to a close with Xianghua's victory.

The brooding clouds that covered the firmament until now broke apart to reveal shafts of sunlight from above.

"Mother...was this the destiny I was meant to fulfill?"

She narrowed her eyes as the brilliant sunlight caressed her innocent, childlike face...

=====
=====

4.1.03 Maxi

- Dandy of the South Seas -

Weapon: Nunchaku

Weapon Name: Fatibal
Style: Shissen Karihadi
Age: 24
Birth Date: May 1
Family: Both parents deceased.
Sworn brother Kyam and
shipmates.
Birthplace: Ryukyu Kingdom
Height: 5' 8"
Weight: 126 lbs.
Blood Type: O

Maxi was carefree pirate from the Ryukyu Kingdom who travelled to wherever the winds would take him. One day, while anchored at an Indian port, his ship came under attack during his absence by a horde of monsters led by Astaroth.

By coincidence, Kilik was there as well, and so they both joined in the battle against the horde. After a fierce battle, they repelled the monsters, but not before one of them snatched the Dvapara-Yuga away from Kilik. Kilik lost his sense of reason and attacked Maxi.

Maxi barely succeeded in suppressing Kilik, but by then the monsters that massacred his sworn brother Kyam and many of his crew were nowhere to be seen...

Having lost all that he held dear, Maxi chose to travel with Kilik and swore an oath of revenge against Astaroth.

---Weapon

Maxi- Fatibal

Fatibal is the name of Maxi's wooden nunchaku made by Yagazzi, one of Maxi's pirate crewmen. Yagazzi made and improved many nunchakus out of necessity for Maxi, since MAXi kept breaking them in battle.

Through trial and error, Yagazzi learned that using Balisanda wood enabled him to make a nunchaku that was strong and durable. This discovery resulted in the creation of Fatibal. Fatibal was perfectly suited for Maxi, since it could handle his extraordinary strength and the special characteristics of his Shissen Karihadi style of fighting.

Each handle of the nunchaku were given the names, Kochi (East Wind) and Hae (South Wind).

---Stage

Harbor of Souls

Maxi's crew regularly visited this harbor in India to trade goods.

In India, there are grand, broadd steps known as a "ghat" that allow worshippers to walk into the river to bathe in holy river water. These steps also lead to narrow, maze-like streets packed tightly with houses, temples, and shops. Visitors who are unfamiliar with the city are said to lose their without exception.

The gray seas of this harbor became the watery burial grounds for the souls of Maxi's sworn brother Kyam and others who met their fate at the hands of Astaroth. Maxi swore to take revenge against Astaroth as he gazed out beyond his sunken ship into the open seas.

---Voice

Your luck ran out when you messed with me!
I won't spare anyone who gets in my way!
What's the matter, can't get up?
Better stop now...If you want to live!
It's been fun!
C'mon there's more!
Try this on for size!
Vengeance is mine!
Toooryah!
Atah!

---Ending

The price of defeating evil was high.
"Heh...What took you so long?"

"No! This can't be!"
"This is...the end of the line for me..."
"...And...Ki...lik..."
"Maxi!!"

Kilik was without words, and Xianghua looked on quietly.

The winds blew and the clouds moved on as if they were oblivious to their mortal plight.

"...It's been fun..."
The clouds seemed to whisper in his voice.

=====

=====
4.1.04 Mitsurugi

- A Mercenary in the Wartime Age -

Weapon: Katana
Weapon Name: Shishi-oh
Style: Tenpu-Kosai-Ryu Kai
Age: 25
Birth Date: June 8
Family: Parents and siblings all
taken by sickness.
Birthplace: Bizen, Japan
Height: 5' 7"
Weight: 143 lbs.
Blood Type: AB

The advent of firearms was a grave matter for a mercenary who made his living by the sword. Yet Mitsurugi was unable to find a trace of the legendary sword, Sould Edge, claimed to be superior to firearms.

In his frustration, he challenged a rifleman to a duel in front of nobility, but suffered an ignominious defeat before the eyes of his lord. This forced Mitsurugi to embark on a quest to perfect his swordsmanship so that he could defeat the rifle. It was during this quest that he learned of a knight named Nightmare, who terrorized Europe with an invincible sword.

"Prepare for my arrival, whoever you are!
I'll soon relieve you of your sword!"

---Weapon

Mitsurugi- Shishi-oh

Shishi-oh is the name of Mitsurugi's katana.

Mitsurugi was soundly defeated and disgraced in front of his lord by a rifleman bearing the Tanegashima rifle during an exhibition duel. This defeat was the catalyst that forced him to perfect his swordsmanship and seek a weapon strong enough to defeat the rifle.

During his intensive training, he became dissatisfied with his old sword Korefuji and replaced it with Shishi-oh, a katana with a longer and wider blade. Mitsurugi perfected many new sword fighting moves to defeat the rifle with Shishi-oh, the Relic being just one of them.

---Stage

Takamatsu Castle

Mitsurugi proved himself as a soldier at Noshima Island, the main headquarters of the Mori Clan's Murakami Navy. Respected by his superiors, Mitsurugi was entrusted with the task of defending Takamatsu Castle at the front lines of the Mori Army.

Takamatsu Castle was considered difficult to conquer because it was surrounded by marshlands. However, a cunning enemy of the Mori named Toyotomi Hideyoshi invaded the castle by flooding the area. Toyotomi constructed a levee around Takamatsu Castle and then released the river water from the rain-swollen Ashimori River, neutralizing the natural defense offered by the marshlands.

Both sides continue to engage in battles that end in stalemate. As the fighting rages on, Mitsurugi boards a raft to join his comrades on a battlefield with arrow-filled skies.

---Voice

No one can take Soul Edge from me!
You'll be in hell...Before me!
The name's Mitsurugi! Don't forget it!
You fool! Don't make me laugh!
This is it! Hiiiyah!
Farewell!
You're finished!
What's the matter?!
Prepare yourself!
May there be mercy for you!

---Ending

After countless battles, the demonic blade Soul Edge was in Mitsurugi's hands.

En route back to his homeland, pirates attacked him on the high seas.

Mitsurugi was completely surrounded by the bloodthirsty pirates.

He smiled without fear as he looked down the barrels of their guns and murmured...

"I've had enough of duels ...You're just what I need to try the blade of my new

sword..."

This was the last anyone heard of the lone samurai known as the "Mercenary in the Wartime Age."

=====
=====

4.1.05 Taki

- Shadow Huntress of Demons -

Weapon: Ninja Sword
Weapon Name: Rekki-Maru & Mekki-Maru
Style: Musoh-Battoh-Ryu
Age: 25
Birth Date: Unknown
Family: Immediate family all felled
by sickness.
Master Toki
Birthplace: Ohmi, Japan
Height: 5' 7"
Weight: 117 lbs.
Blood Type: A

Taki was a member of a ninja clan sworn to defeat evil demons.

Believing that her beloved sword Rekki-Maru was resonating in sympathy with the evil sword Soul-Edge, Taki crossed the sea to seek the truth. While abroad, she managed to obtain a fragment of the evil sword.

Returning to her homeland, Taki failed to meld the fragment into her own sword. However, when Taki attempted to fuse the same fragment with the sword Mekki-Maru, the two materials joined together immediately and an evil aura began to emanate from the sword's blade...

In order to pit Mekki-Maru against the remaining Soul Edge, Taki travelled to foreign lands once again.

Yet in the dark recesses of her heart, Taki felt the desire to master the immense power of the demonic blade.

---Weapon

Taki- Rekki-Maru & Mekki-Maru

Taki made her own weapons and protective gear partly out of need and partly as a hobby. Taki created her most prized

possession Rekki-Maru by incorporating supernatural powers in its blade. For Taki, it proved time and again to be a valuable partner in her work of slaying demons.

On the other hand, Mekki-Maru was a sword cloaked in mystery. Ever since it was fused with a fragment of Soul Edge, the sword emanated an evil aura whenever withdrawn from its protective scabbard. Because of this, even Taki handled it with caution. In any even, she would surely find a way to subjugate into obedience this sword of unmeasured potential.

---Stage

Hoko Temple

The Hoko Temple was constructed in Kyoto under the auspices of Toyotomi Hideyoshi, a ruler of Japan during the 16th century. Although the temple was officiall¹⁶ intended to a place where Buddhist monks could pray to bring peace and stability to the nation, the temple had a secondary, ulterior role as a focal point of a "katana-gari" campaign to quell the peasant-led uprisings that occurred frequently during that era.

(Japanese Historical Note: "Katana-gari" was part of a political policy to remove weapons like katanas away from all people with the exception of the samurai nobility and to establish a rigid feudal class system. Until that time, there were no strict social boundaries between soldiers (samurai), merchants (sho-nin) and farmers (no-min). This is why Mitsurugi, who once was a peasant, could rise to the ranks of the samurai-class. After this rigid feudal policy was instituted, farmers were prohibited from bearing katana, and therefore effectively eliminated the ability of the lower classes to improve their place in society.)

Toyotomi felled thousands-year-old cedars to make the central support pillars of the temple and used iron from weapons confiscated through the katana-gari to create the giant Buddha statue. Unfortunately for Toyotomi, these materials used in the construction of the temple proved to have evil karmic consequences. The destruction of the old-growthcedars was equivalent to the killing of an ancient life force. In

addition, the blood of the victims killed
by the weapons cursed the iron.

It was only natural that this place bore
the seeds of disaster and became the
source of misfortune for the Toyotomi
clan.

---Voice

Ready to meet your maker?
Say your prayers, misguided one!
Back for more?!
Hmph, haven't you had enough?!
Hmm, are you sure?
Demon defeated!
Why don't you disappear?
Shyaaaaaa!
Evil! Begone!
Go away!

---Ending

"Evil...Begone!"

Taki's cry and Mekki-Maru both pierced
through Inferno.

Taki wielded Mekki-Maru at her will, which
bore the same evil as Inferno.

But the faint resonance of Mekki-Maru
along with the doubt in her heart would
not stop.

"...So there is no end to this?"
Yet surely she will triumph somehow...

...And repeat her favorite line, "Demon
slain, the deed is done."

=====
=====

4.1.06 Voldo

- Hell's Guardian -

Weapon: Katar x 2
Weapon Name: Shame & Blame
Style: Self-taught
Age: 46
Birth Date: August 25
Family: Parents and four siblings,
all killed through warfare.
Birthplace: Palermo, Italy
Height: 6'
Weight: 185 lbs.

Blood Type: A

The Italian merchant Vercci had sought Soul Edge, yet he went to the grave without ever obtaining it. After Vercci's death, his loyal vassal Voldo became the guardian of the Money Pit, which was Vercci's treasure vault in addition to being his tomb.

Voldo had once attempted to fulfill his MAster's last wish of obtaining Soul Edge and even ventured abroad in its pursuit, but he was unsuccessful.

While Voldo was guarding the pit one day, a trespasser appeared. Voldo had chased the woman away, but upon doing so, heard the familiar voice of his master.

"Voldo, that woman...She had the scent of Soul Edge upon her...Hunt her down, and bring me Soul Edge this time!!"

---Weapon

Voldo- Shame & Blame

Shame and Blame are the names of Voldo's twin Katars.

Vercci collected treasures from every corner of the world and believed that he had everything that was worth collecting. His enormous treasure trove included many rare foreign curiosities. Vercci favored the Katars that were brought back from India and gave a pair to his loyal vassal Voldo as weapons. Shame and Blame are one of the tens of Katar types stored in the Money Pit. Even after Vercci's death, these weapons were used to hunt down robbers and adventurers who ventured into the Money Pit.

---Stage

Money Pit

The Money Pit had aa proud history of protecting its treasures from robbers and adventurers alike. Ironically, it was conquered easily by the forces of Mother Nature when a devastating storm flooded most of its treasure vaults.

Although this room was the highest among the treasure vaults, it was not spared from the flood. Now, the marble stature of the dead master Vercci towers solemnly

into the air. Voldo salvaged what treasures he could from the depths of their watery grave and placed them in a chamber containing his master's coffin.

---Voice

Shuuuukouuuu
Kouuuushuuuu
Shuuukouuu
Kouuushuuu
Shuuuu
Kouuuu
Shuuu
Kouuu
Shuu
Kouu

---Ending

The moment he grasped the evil sword, a flood of evil energy coursed through Voldo's body and made him writhe in agony.

"Entrust you soul to the sword..."
A familiar voice echoed in his mind.

As he gave in to the power of the sword, the pain dissolved miraculously and his memory along with his youth returned.

The image of his dead master was reflected in his eyes, now wide open.

His master's wish was finally fulfilled, as was his.

In the empty solitary darkness of this place, he found eternal bliss.

=====
=====

4.1.07 Sophitia

- Renewal of the Vow -

Weapon: Short Sword & Small Shield
Weapon Name: Omega Sword & Elk Shield
Style: Athenian
Age: 21
Birth Date: March 12
Family: Father- Achelous
Mother- Nike
Younger Sister- Cassandra
Younger Brother- Lucius
Birthplace: Athens, Ottoman Empire
Height: 5' 6"

Weight: Unknown

Blood Type: B

Following an oracle from Hephaestus, the god of fire and smithery, Sophitia succeeded in destroying one half of Soul Edge.

After recovering from the wounds she suffered from the sword fragments, she returned to her life as the daughter of a baker and spent her days peacefully. However, one day Sophitia had an ominous vision of a knight in azure armor and a sword of immense evil.

Once again, Sophitia received an oracle from Hephaestus to destroy the remaining Soul Edge. As she embarked on her journey, Sophitia held on tightly to the sword and shield forged by Rothion, her betrothed.

---Weapon

Sophitia- Omega Sword & Elk Shield

The Omega Sword and the Elk Shield are the short sword and small shield used by Sophitia.

Rothion, Sophitia's betrothed and swordsmith, forged both the sword and shield using sacred iron bequeathed from Hephaestus. With Sophitia's oracle in his thoughts, Rothion put his heart and soul into forging this sword and shield.

These weapons served to protect Sophitia from the malice of Soul Edge as well as to guide her during her quest. Whenever Sophitia used these weapons, Rothion was always alongside her in spirit during her trials and tribulations.

---Stage

Shrine of Eurydice

Legend says that circular shrine was constructed atop an ancient sacred mountain by the gods to sanctify themselves. As if to prove the legend, the path to the shrine consisted of gigantic stairs that no mere mortal could ever hope to scale.

Thus, the Shrine of Eurydice was built upon a small plain at the edge of a nearby mountain in the hopes that the gods would come down from their shrine to visit them.

Those who visit this shrine feel as if they are floating in air since divine light and a sea of clouds envelop them.

---Voice

I want to save you!
I can't give up now!
I won't give up hope!
I won!
Was that too much?
Forgive me!
I can't lose!
Take this!
This is it!
I'm sorry!

---Ending

After fulfilling the sacred duty entrusted upon her by Hephaestus, Sophitia returned home to her betrothed.

"Rothion, I..."

"I understand, Sophie."

The long delayed wedding took place at last with the blessings of the townspeople.

Time passed and Sophitia was blessed with the birth of her child.

"Thou I can no longer hear the voices of the gods, perhaps my child can..."

The child smiled back as if in reply to her words.

=====
=====

4.1.08 Astaroth

- A Soldier of the Heretics -

Weapon: Giant Ax
Weapon Name: Kulutues
Style: Gyulkus
Age: 3
Birth Date: September 3
Family: None.
There are many similiar creatures like him.
Birthplace: Unknown
Height: 6' 4"
Weight: 209 lbs.
Blood Type: None

The god of destruction Palgaea desired to possess the demonic blade Soul Edge and ordered his grand priest Kunpaetku to seek out Soul Edge.

Astaroth was created in hellish heat under the divine protection of the god of destruction to head up the quest. The grand priest Kunpaetku ordered his creation, the giant Astaroth, to find the demonic blade.

As he gazed upon Astaroth as he departed from the shrine with a giant ax in hand, the grand priest laughed to himself, "If I possessed this immense power that even the gods desire, I shall become a god myself!"

---Weapon

Astaroth- Kulutues

The grand priest Kunpaetku of the heretical order Fygyul Cestemus made Astaroth's giant ax called Kulutues. The grand priest used many invocations to create this giant ax, which Astaroth took on his quest to find Soul Edge. Astaroth used Kulutues (which means "Merciless Destroyer" in the ancient language of the order), during his rampages.

The souls taken by Kulutues served to feed the never-ending hunger of Nightmare's Soul Edge. Once Soul Edge was full of souls, it would be taken to Astaroth's true master Palgaea, the god of evil, to bring forth the Apocalypse.

---Stage

Palgaea Shrine

The Palgaea Shrine is an underground lair that deifies the god of evil Palgaea. Located at the foot of a volcano, its grand hall is always filled with fiery lava. There is a triangular-shaped altar at the center of the shrine, where the grand priest Kunpaetku presides over various ceremonies. This is also the place where Astaroth uttered his birth cry.

The materials used to construct this shrine are not known, however, the various surrounding statues as well as the face of the serpent spewing lava suggest that they are extremely heat resistant. No one knows

whether these materials are man-made or
born of evil magic.

---Voice

Go to hell!
Ggrrrrrr
Get lost!
Eyeehehehehe
Your soul's mine!
Dead yet?
You worm!
Die!
Squirm!
Scream!

---Ending

Astaroth returned before the grand priest
Kunpaetku with Soul Edge in hand.

"Astaroth, you have done well. Now the
power that surpasses the gods is mine!"

"What...are you doing! No, unhand me!
Stop! STOP!"
"Need...more...souls..."

Engulfed in crimson hellfire, the two
figures eventually fade from view.

What were Astaroth's true intentions?
There is no way to know...

=====
=====

4.1.09 Nightmare

- Azure Nightmare -

Weapon: Soul Edge
Weapon Name: Soul Edge
Style: Memories of Soul Edge?
Age: Unknown
Birth Date: Unknown
Family: Unknown
Birthplace: Unknown
Height: 5' 6"
Weight: 209 lbs.
Blood Type: Unknown

No one knows when the knight in azure
armor first appeared in Europe.

It was said that those who saw this
knight's crimson eyes could not escape
death.

The grotesquely shaped sword in his hand appeared as if enraptured when bathed in the blood of the living. And then there were the grotesque monsters that followed him...

Seasoned knights and armies equipped with the latest firearms were no match for it, as the nightmarish horde cut a path of destruction and horror through towns and villages.

---Weapon

Nightmare- Soul Edge

Soul Edge is the legendary sword of Nightmare.

To some, it was the "Hero's Sword," and to others, the "Sword of Immortality." Although the details of this legendary sword changed as its rumor traveled around the world, its true nature was unmistakably evil.

Nightmare was said to be a young warrior who was corrupted by taking possession of Soul Edge. The evil sword had a will of its own, and it transformed itself into a gigantic sword that would make the best use of the warrior's fighting experience.

Its single eye appeared enraptured whenever the grotesquely shaped sword was bathed in blood. The demonic blade manipulated its bearer to commit atrocities so that it could consume the souls of the innocent. Soul Edge's true purpose and intent remains to be discovered.

---Stage

Ostrheinsburg Castle

Ostrheinsburg Castle rises high with the deep forests of Mittelberg in Germany behind it. Constructed by a renowned, independent knight named Sir Stefan, this castle's defenses consisted of quadruple castle walls considered as being impregnable.

However, after Sir Stefan was killed in a war, the remaining soldiers loyal to him were summarily executed and women and children were taken away as slaves. After thieves plundered it thoroughly, this

castle became a tragic ruin that reeked of death. It became a place where none dared to visit.

---Voice

There's no turning back now!
Blood...Darkness...Come unto me!
I shall reclaim my soul!
My sword, give me strength!
Souls, come unto me!
You ask for more?!
Waaaryah!Take this!
I'm through with you!
More!

---Ending

The time had come...With countless souls stolen from brave warriors, the evil sword now transformed into an appirition of his father.

"Siegfried, my dear son..."
"F..Father..."

"Pierce me with this sword."
"What?!"

"I am nothing more than an illusion.
Reflect back upon your sins and repent."

Standing before his father's grave, he whispered to himself, "Is redemption possible?"

And so he embarked upon a journey with atonement as his cross to bear, embracing within his heart the last wishes of his father.

=====
=====

4.1.10 Isabella Valentine (Ivy)

- Twisting Blade of Solitude -

Weapon: Snake Sword
Weapon Name: Ivy Blade
Style: Unrelated Link
Age: 28
Birth Date: December 10
Family: Adoptive parents dead through sickness.
Birth parents unknown.
Birthplace: London, England
Height: 5' 10"

Weight: 128 lbs.

Blood Type: Unknown

Ivy was raised with love in the house of the English nobles, the Valentines. However, her father Count Valentine died a madman, driven to insanity through an obsession with alchemy.

The House of Valentine was brought down by the Count's insanity. Soon after her family's fall, Ivy learned from her mother on her deathbed that she was an adopted child. Ivy, however, had no interest in her "true parents."

Ivy eventually learned about her father's search for the mystical sword Soul Edge and began to follow in his footsteps in its quest.

As Ivy learned more about Soul Edge, she discovered its true nature and swore to destroy the demonic blade. She succeeded in creating a weapon for this purpose through ancient sorcery.

To this day, she is still oblivious about her true lineage...

---Weapon

Ivy- Ivy Blade

Ivy's Snake Sword called Ivy Blade has the ability to expand and contract at will.

Ivy researched countless weapons to find one that was suitable for her quest to destroy Soul Edge. Based upon an Asian multi-segmented whip, her sword came to life by Nightmare's touch. Armed with this weapon, she embarked on her quest.

But little did she know that her Ivy Blade was brought to life by the power of Soul Edge, the same sword she sought to destroy. She also remained ignorant of the fact that her own bloodline served to strengthen the sword.

---Stage

Valentine Mansion

Count Valentine constructed the avant-garde Valentine Mansion by using the wealth and political contacts amassed through trade. Countless parties that showed off the prosperity of the Valentine

family were held in the great hall where expensive rose-colored marble was used in great abundance.

However, Count Valentine was beguiled by Soul Edge's powers and began to squander his riches madly in its pursuit. It was not long before the Valentine clan fell into ruin.

Ivy, the adopted daughter of the Count, remains here alone to pursue Soul Edge by researching alchemy and ancient sorcery.

---Voice

I'll tear everythin apart!
Do you want more?
Sing, my sword!
This sword is my treasure!
Haaaa haa haa
This is the end for you!
There's still more!
Fesity one!
Behave!
Dance I say, dance!

---Ending

"But...It can't be..."
Through her battles, her premonitions proved to be true.

Although evil had been destroyed, the sword would not die.

The cursed blood that flowed through her veins was the sword's life source.

However she felt no hesitation in coming to terms with the truth.

"I feel as though a burden on my soul has been lifted..."

The fetters of her curse were broken and thus began a new unholy quest.

=====
=====

4.1.11 Hwang Sung Kyung

- Burning Patriot -

Weapon: Chinese Sword
Weapon Name: Blue Thunder
Style: Hwang Style Long Blade

Age: 28
Birth Date: August 8
Family: Parents deceased.
Master Seung Han Myong
Birthplace: Chili-san, Lee Dynasty Korea
Height: 5' 7"
Weight: 137 lb.
Blood Type: AB

Rumor of an impending invasion of his homeland reached Hwang during his quest for Soul Edge, the "Sword of Salvation." He immediately cut short his quest and returned to his country, but not before dragging home Seung Mina, the runaway daughter of his master Seung Han Myong.

Not long after Hwang joined the Coastal Defense Force, he received news that Mina had run away from home again. Irritated by the news, Hwang lost his better judgement and caused his men to fall into a pirate's trap, resulting in the loss of many lives.

Hwang's superior, Admiral Lee Sun Shin, dismissed him from the Coastal Defense Force for his debacle and gave him a new set of orders. To aid his good friend Seung Han Myong, Lee ordered Hwang to search for Mina under the guise of seeking the Sword of Salvation.

Hwang immediately understood the true nature of the Admiral's orders and departed for the West again.

---Weapon

Hwang- Blue Thunder

Hwang's Chinese sword, was given to him by Admiral Lee Sun Shin, as Hwang embarked on his new quest. This sword was originally given to the Admiral in his youth by Seung Han Myong, who descended from a clan famous for their military skills and now trains Hwang as his master.

When Hwang was given this weapon, the true intent of the Admiral's orders was not lost on him. Although he was told to search for the "Sword of Salvation," his true mission was to find the headstrong runaway Seung Mina.

Armed with the weapon of his country's hero, Hwang immediately departed for the West again. What was in store for him beyond the desert sands?

---Stage

Silk Road Ruins

The prosperous oasis cities on the outskirts of the Takla Makan Desert in Central Asia were important relay stations for trade caravans travelling across the great Silk Road.

This ancient ruin is inside a stone cavern in a deep, tranquil ravine that is a day's travel away by horse-drawn wagon from an oasis city. Legend says that a rich merchant who desired a life of simple tranquility away from the hustle and bustle of commerce built this place. Proof of the merchant's wealth can be seen in the ruin's walls and floors, where precious lapis lazuli and malachite are used lavishly.

---Voice

Save yourself!
I'll remember your defeat!
I'll make my own way through history!
Go home!
You idiot!
Teeeya!
How did you like That?!
You're finished!
Meet your doom!
Sorei!

---Ending

One legend spoke of the "Sword of Salvation" as being in truth an evil sword that drove souls insane.

Injured during a fight with Inferno, the incarnation of the sword, Mina came to his aid.

"You can depend on me now."
"...Indeed...Than you."

"We need not rely on legends anymore, for we shall protect our country ourselves."

The zealous patriots depart for the seas of unrest to protect their country and their people.

Their stories will surely be retold with pride to future generations.

=====

=====
4.1.12 Yoshimitsu

- The First Mechanized Ninja -

Weapon: Katana
Weapon Name: Yoshimitsu
Style: Manji Ninjutsu
Age: Unknown
Birthdate: Unknown
Family: Unknown
Entire clan was massacred.
Birthplace: Unknown
Height: 5' 7"
Weight: 126 lbs.
Blood Type: O

Yoshimitsu was the only survivor of the Manji Ninja Clan, after it was attacked by the samurai lord Oda Nobunaga.

Yoshimitsu lost his right arm during the battle against Lord Oda, but that did not stop him from crossing the sea to find Soul Edge, rumored to be the ultimate weapon in all of existence. Yoshimitsu wanted the weapon to take his revenge against Nobunaga.

During his travels, he came across horrific atrocities left behind by a knight in azure armor. He sensed the hatred and despair of the knight's victims and reflected on his situation.

"Vengeance will be mine, but if I continue along this path, I will be no better than Nobunaga or the azure knight..."

Even as this moral dilemma gnawed at his soul, he continued his search for the sword of vengeance.

---Weapon

Yoshimitsu- Yoshimitsu

Yoshimitsu's beloved self-named katana was handed down through many generations of the famed Manji clan. At first glance, the sword appears to be just another katana, but it has many unique features that accommodated the Manji Clan's unique martial arts style. Because of this, no one outside of the clan could replicate it.

One day, a feudal lord wiped out the entire clan and deprived Yoshimitsu of his

home and family. Thus, Yoshimitsu swore an oath of vengeance upon the last remaining sword of his clan.

Years later after its confrontation with Soul Edge, this sword took on a mysterious glow and became a supernatural weapon for the champion of the poor and weak.

---Stage

Water Labyrinth

Japan is land blessed with greenery, water, and giant labyrinth-like underground rivers, fed by water from the surface. These rivers lead to various points throughout the country.

The water that eventually reaches the underground river, after traveling through the earth for many years, is extremely cold and clear. The cavernous walls where the rivers travel through are covered with luminescent moss that provides the only source of light. The soft, pale blue light that emanates from the moss creates a dreamlike atmosphere.

---Voice

Your life is in vain!
May there be mercy for you!
Your life is in vain
May there be mercy for you!
Hyaaaah!
Shyaaaao!
Shhhyui!
Shyuraa!
Gyaau!
Ooohoa!

---Ending

"Taste the steel of my blade, demon!"
With a flash of his katana, Yoshimitsu destroyed the evil sword.

At that moment, lightning from the evil sword struck his beloved katana, and it became the host of a ghostly glow.

"Has my sword been possessed by evil?
Never!! This I shall not allow!"

"Honor is reflected in one's deeds-
Inaction bespeaks of cowardice."
And thus Yoshimitsu became a protector of the poor.

Eventually, his name became known throughout the land, and valiant men came to gather under his name.

Yoshimitsu the First became the head of a band of chivalrous thieves, and his name continues to live on to this day.

=====
=====

4.1.13 Lizardman

- Jade-Scaled Terror -

Weapon: Short Sword & Small Shield
Weapon Name: Xi Sword & Game Shield
Style: Gyulkus (Rapid Ares Style)
Age: 3
Birth Date: Unknown
Family: Unknown
There are many similiar creatures like him.
Birthplace: Unknown
Height: 5' 11"
Weight: 190 lbs.
Blood Type: Unknown

Aeon Calcos was a warrior who received an oracle from Hephaestus, the ancient god of smiths, to destroy the demonic blade. Thus, he wandered the world in search of Soul Edge to fulfill his destiny.

One day, desert travellers rescued Aeon from certain death in the desert and brought him back to their oasis village. However, he could repay their kindness, the Evil Seed rained down and transformed him into a bloodthirsty berserker that massacred everyone in the village.

The stories of a berserker in the desert reached the ears of the grand priest Kunpaetku of the dark order Fygu Cestemus. Aeon was captured by the dark order and became a human subject in a diabolical experiment. The experiment caused an unspeakable transformation in Aeon...

"Find the demon sword Soul Edge!"

To the newly spawned slave of the grand priest, these words were absolute.

---Weapon

Lizardman- Xi Sword & Game Shield

The Xi Sword and Game Shield are the names of Lizardman's short sword and small shield.

Before Aeon Calcos was transformed into Lizardman, like Sophitia, he received an oracle from Hephaestus to destroy Soul Edge as well as these sacred implements of battle.

Although both sword and shield are without a doubt sacred in origin, its remains to be seen whether they retain their holy, given Aeon's fate.

---Stage

Kunpaetku Shrine

When Kunpaetku was promoted to the rank of grand priest, he schemed to create a troop of grotesque creatures within the dark order who were loyal only to him.

He had also secretly built a shrine that mirrored the design of the Palgaea Shrine. However, in contrast to the hellish heat of the Palgaea Shrine, poisonous fumes filled this place instead. Strange, ominous light also filled the recesses of the shrine, generated by the mysterious pools of glowing liquid that produced the poisonous gasses.

Though highly poisonous to humans, perhaps this environment was intended for the grotesque abominations of nature that dwell in this shrine.

---Sword

Grr grr grrraaaul!

Grrraaaul

Baggrau!

Aaarwl!

Grrrwl!

Grrr!

Rrrowrrowl

Grrowl!

Grrroww!

Grraun!

---Ending

Inferno disappeared into the infinite darkness with countless lost souls.

The overwhelming power, the pure insanity,

and the temptation for destruction...

Injured during the violent struggle,
Lizardman devoted himself to madness.

With a hideous roar, Lizardman expressed
his lust for more destruction and carnage.

Other monstrous abominations gathered
under the moonlight as if summoned by
his roar.

And so the cold-blooded legion led by
Lizardman began the hunt for their next
prey...

=====
=====

4.1.14 Siegfried Schtauffen

- A Soul in Purgatory -

Weapon: Zweihander
Weapon Name: Requiem
Style: Self-taught
Age: 19
Birthdate: February 6
Family: Father- Frederick, killed by
Siegfried
Mother- Margaret
Birthplace: Holy Roman Empire
Height: 5' 5"
Weight: 110 lbs.
Blood Type: A

Siegfried barely hung on to his sanity by
supressing the memory of him killing his
father.

He obtained Soul Edge to avenge what
cannot be avenged, only to become enslaved
by it instead.

Many years passed during which time his
soul was consumed by the demonic blade,
and he eventually came to be known as
Nightmare. The resurrection of his father
Frederick succeded at last, but he
discovered it was a mere illusion created
by his weak soul.

Admonished by the illusion of his father,
he accepted responsibility for his sins by
relinquishing ownership of Soul Edge. As
penance for his sins, Siegfried now
travels around the world to destroy any
evil left by the demonic blade.

---Weapon

Siegfried- Requiem

Requiem is the name of Siegfried's
Zweihander swords.

After freeing himself from the Soul Edge's
evil curse, Siegfried armed himself with a
new Zweihander sword named Requiem and
embarked on a journey of atonement. The
deathblow Siegfried dealt when slaying
demonic monsters was fueled by his need
and zeal to distance himself from his
cursed past. He traveled the lonesome path
of redemption to save his soul, but would
he ever find peace within his soul?

---Stage

City of Water

Venice, the City of water, is a maze-like
city on water composed of countless
islands in a lagoon interconnected by a
patchwork network of bridges. In its
halcyon years during the Renaissance era,
Venice monopolized all trade and brought
northeastern Italy under its political
control.

This city is full of magnificent
architecture, art and wealth. People are
drawn to this city as if it were some kind
of beautiful mirage.

Some come here with dreams of riches,
while others come to meet their destiny...

---Voice

Is there hope for me?
I'll take back my soul!
I'll redeem myself!
What should I do?
Come on, come on!
How do you feel now?!
You're finished!
Take this!
I'm through with you!
Give me more!

---Ending

There was nothing to stand in the way of
the wind that cut through this valley.

The evil within him had been exorcised,
and now the warrior cast his eyes upon the
windblown valley.

His childhood memories, the valiant figure of his father, the beginning of his madness, and the Schwarzwind (Black Wind)...

"...Siegfried, where have you been for the last three years?"
"I shall tell you about it someday."

Familiar faces, new faces...It seemed the Schwarzwind was alive and well.

"Demons are on the attack!"
"Prepare to fight, men!"
And thus a new wind began to blow...

=====
=====

4.1.15 Rock

- The Earthshaker -

Weapon: Battle Ax
Weapon Name: Apocalypse
Style: Self-taught
Age: 38
Birth Date: December 14
Family: Parents missing.
Raising Bangoo, a Native American orphan.
Birthplace: Born in London, raised in the New World
Height: 5' 9"
Weight: 187 lb.
Blood Type: Unknown

As a young child, Rock was cast adrift at sea after a shipwreck and landed in the New World, an orphan without parents.

Many years later, he came across an orphan named Bangoo, who lost his kin through tribal warfare. Rock felt sympathetic to the boy and became his guardian.

Rock had once travelled abroad in search of Soul Edge, a distant memory and a fleeting clue to his past. However, he realized that by doing so, he was subjecting Bangoo to the same loneliness that he had suffered as a child, and so he returned home to Bangoo.

But one day, Bangoo disappeared.

Kunpaetku, the grand priest of a

heretical order called Fygyul Cystemus, was responsible for Bangoos kidnapping. The abduction of Bangoo by his Lizardmen was part of his plan to lure Rock out into the open with the ultimate goal of taking his soul.

"Bangoo, I will never abandon you!" Rock cried out as he crossed the sea again in desperate search for Bangoo.

---Weapon

Rock- Apocalypse

Apocalypse is the name of Rock's immense battle ax.

Rock had to battle wild beasts from time to time in order to protect himself and his adopted son Bangoo. Rock wore fur out of respect for the courageous beasts that shared the wilderness with him.

The sound of Apocalypse slashing through the air is a tell-tale sign of Rock engaged in a life-or-death struggle.

---Stage

The Colosseum

The Colosseum is what remains of an ancient coliseum built around canals. It appears to have served as a stadium for competition and a theater as well. The seating capacity of this place is approximately 20,000, which ranks in size with the Megalopolis in Greece.

The players entered the Colosseum on boats adorned with gold and silver. Winner were praised atop the altar of sacred fire in the center of the Colosseum.

---Voice

Ban goo, this is for you!
Grr grrowl!
It's no use! Give up!
Bangooooo!
Get out of my way!
Daryaaah!
Nuuaawah!
Get lost!
Eeyaaah!
Hayaah!

---Ending

At the end of the fierce battle, Rock finally rescued Bangoo and returned back to their homeland in the wilderness.

Although he staggered a little, Bangoo lifted Rock's ax high.

"See, I'll be okay Rock. I can take care of myself from now on."

With the passing of time, Bangoo became a strong young man.

He would recall Rock's words whenever he saw a large cloud in the vast blue sky.

"You'll leave someday on a quest of your own, to find your true soul for yourself."

=====
=====

4.1.16 Seung Mina

- Hear and Soul Girl -

Weapon: Ancestral Zamba-toh
Weapon Name: Scarlet Thunder
Style: Seung Style Longsword and
Ling Sheng Su Style Rod
Age: 19
Birth Date: November 3
Family: Father- Seung Han Myong
Mother and younger brother
taken by sickness.
Birthplace: Chili-san, Lee Dynasty Korea
Height: 5' 4"
Weight: 106 lbs.
Blood Type: A

Seung Mina ran away from home to follow Hwang on his quest to find Soul Edge, the "Sword of Salvation." Unfortunately for Seung Mina, Hwang drageed her back home when he found her.

It was not long before Seung Mina ran away from home again. Her frustrations with rigorous training, combined with a marriage proposal from one of her father's pupils, sent her over the edge and out the door.

Seung Mina resumed her quest for the swprd, but gained a valuabel lesson along the way. Following a humiliating and utter defeat, she learned never to underestimate an opponent's abilities.

She underwent further training during her travels to refine her skills, and now she was ready to renew her quest for the Sword of Salvation.

---Weapon

Seung Mina- Scarlet Thunder

Scarlet Thunder is the name of Seung Mina's Zamba-toh.

Mina's Zamba-toh is one of the weapons passed down through many generations of the Seung family. Mina played with this large blade ever since she was a toddler, so despite its considerable weight, she was able to wield it easily and took it with her when she ran away from home for the second time.

Mina combined the rod style taught to her by Kong Xiuqiang with her own individual style and thus armed, she has departed to search for the "Sword of Salvation" as a way to prove her independence. Do the thoughts and prayers of her father and Hwang reach this headstrong girl?

---Stage

Maze of the Dead

Built before the birth of Christ according to legend, the underground city of Cappadocia in Turkey is still shrouded in mystery.

Several centuries after Cappadocia was established, a reigning monarch converted a similiar underground temple nearby into an extravagant palace.

This temple stands above a deep chasm claimed from ancient times to be the gateway to Hades. The interior of the temple contains the section that was converted into a palace. In addition, a cavern exists beyond the palace, followed by more unexplored nether regions. No one knows for sure what exists down there.

The palace itself is in ruins now, thanks to those who turned it into a rock quarry of sorts. However, the lower underground areas remain intact.

Since treasure seeking thieves who venture into the lower levels of the ruins never come back alive, no one but the most

foolhardy enter this place now.

---Voice

Now! Let's fight!
Don't treat me like child!
Father, I won't lose!
Ha! That felt good!
Had enough?
Try and dodge this!
How dare you!
I've got you!
This is it!
Damn you!

---Ending

Mina used every ounce of strength left in her to defeat the final enemy. Exhausted, she was about to collapse when...

"Don't you have a homeland to save?"
"Oh...Hwang..."

Her cheeks reddened and though she struggled, she lacked the strength to escape from his strong arms.

Upon returning home, Mina found a far more dangerous enemy waiting for her. The idiot son of the Kim family proposed.

"Hey, let's get hitched. I've even brought a gift of a hundred cattle as a sign of my love for you!"

"Hmmm...Maybe I should run away again..."

=====
=====

4.1.17 Edge Master

- The master of Blades -

Weapon: All weapons
Weapon Name: All weapons
Style: All
Age: Unknown
Birth Date: January 1
Family: Lived with Kilik for three years.
Birthplace: Unknown
Height: 5' 9"
Weight: 176 lbs.
Blood Type: O

No one know about the details of Edge Master, an old man who is a teacher of

martial arts at the Ling Shen Su Temple. Although renowned for his skill with all weapons, his past and true name were shrouded in mystery.

Edge Master taught Kilik, the cursed successor of the Kali-Yuga, how to suppress the evil within himself over the course of three long years.

Something troubled the old master after Kilik left on his quest to purify himself and the Kali-Yuga. Although Edge Master's motives were unknown, he broke his long silence and departed on his own quest.

Was there a connection between the old master and the evil sword Soul Edge? No one knows for sure...

---Weapon

Edge Master- All Weapons

Although Edge Master could wield all weapons skillfully as if they were extensions of his limbs, his philosophy was that they were mere tools, regardless of their power. This was due to his core belief that it was a strong soul, and not a weapon that made a strong warrior.

Although Edge Master made all of his weapons, none of them bear names in accordance with his philosophy.

---Stage

Proving Grounds (TWILIGHT)

The harsh daylight gives way to the setting sun that colors the entire area in the soft, gentle rose-colored hues of twilight.

As if forgotten by time, the ruins nearby lie in shadows, weathered and worn away by the unforgiving rain and river. Now, the remaining light of the setting sun reflects off the river's surface. Although this is a place forgotten and abandoned by man, its natural beauty holds an undeniable charm for those who gaze upon it.

This place was a natural choice for the man who devoted his remaining days to achieving perfection in all forms of martial arts.

---Voice

Do you think you can beat this old man?
This match is mine!
You've come a thousand years too soon!
Begone now!
Heeyah!
Idiot!
Here I come!
Take this!
Sooryah!
Twaah!

---Ending

"It's been a long, hard trip, and it's
good to be back at last."

"Seems like Kilik is ready to take the
test."

"Kilik!"

"Yes master."

"Wait right here."

"...Master, you've become...!!"

"I shall teach you the art of mastering
the evil within you by using evil itself!"

"Prepare yourself Kilik, defeat me if you
can. Are you ready?! Kaaaaah!!"

=====
=====

4.1.18 Cervantes de Leon

- The Immortal Pirate -

Weapon: Long Sword and Pistol Sword
Weapon Name: Acheron & Nirvana
Style: Memories of Soul Edge
Age: Stopped at 48
Birth Date: January 1
Family: Parents deceased
Killed all his crew but has
no recollection of this.
Birthplace: Valencia, Spain
Height: 5' 10"
Weight: 176 lbs.
Blood Type: None

Cervantes grew up full of pride over his
father who was a great seaman, but became
a notorious pirate because of his father's
death.

He obtained Soul Edge, and it eventually

drove him mad as it devoured his soul. His insanity made him destroy anyone who came seeking the sword. Cervantes' reign of terror continued for over 20 years until Sophitia and Taki defeated him.

But this was not the end of Cervantes...

Nightmare, the new master of Soul Edge, brought Cervantes back from the dead. Once again, Cervantes seeks the demonic blade with renewed fervor and strength.

---Weapon

Cervantes- Acheron & Nirvana

Acheron and Nirvana were the long sword and pistol sword, respectively, of the resurrected pirate Cervantes. These implements of destruction were probably booty from his pirate days, recovered by Cervantes from his beloved ship the "Adrian."

Nirvana was an unusual sword that contained a pistol in its hilt. This was perfectly suited to Cervantes and his intimidating fighting style. However, after tasting the power of Soul Edge, his weapons paled in comparison and left much to be desired.

---Stage

The Adrian and the Fortress

This battle fortress on the Atlantic coast of Spain served double duty as a trading port for treasure ships of the Spanish Armada.

When the dread pirate Cervantes returned from beyond the grave, he began to attack and plunder treasure ships from the Americas as well as the Far East. Even ships from his motherland Spain were not spared from his ruthless ways. In fact, there are various historical records of clashes between Cervantes and the Spanish Armada.

His ship, the Adrian, became a ghost ship that was surrounded by an otherworldly glow that resembled St. Elmo's fire. The eerie sight of this ship could be seen from dusk to dawn when Cervantes prowled the high seas for his next victim.

Due to the sheer number and spread of the

St. Elmo's fire, Cervantes' victims
believed that they were surrounded by a
large pirate fleet and either abandoned
ship or fell into a state of sheer
madness.

---Voice

Taste my pain!
I'll see you in hell!
No one can stop me!
Mm, mm, mm, mmmwah, ha, ha, ha.
Got you!
Dorrryah!
Torryaah!
Say your prayers!
Take this!
Not so fast!

---Ending

The long lost sword...
And his onetime master...

He reached toward the demon sword, now
without a host, and the two became one
once again.

A lone figure appeared, clawing his way
through the eternal flames of evil.

Regaining a lost part of himself, his
memories came flooding back and the broken
chain was now complete again.

His ship spread fear across the seas once
more as even the warships of the great
naval powers were sent downt to their
watery graves.

"Raise the anchor and make sail, me
hardies! Cervantes de Leon sails again!"

=====
=====

4.1.19 Inferno

- The Hellfire of Despair -

Weapon: All weapons
Weapon Name: All weapons
Style: All
Age: Unknown
Birth Date: Unknown
Family: Unknown
Birtplace: Unknown
Height: Unknown

Weight: Unknown

Blood Type: None

Although no one knows when or where it first appeared exactly, "It" definitely exists...

It took on the shape of a sword in order to devour more souls and exists in the grip of someone's hands even now. Those who hold it are unable to escape from the curse of its evil powers.

It continues to devour in darkness the souls of those who are led astray by fate. While it burns fiercely with the anguish and regret of those lost souls, its blade shines with an icy gleam.

---Weapon

Inferno- All Weapons

Inferno was the embodiment of Soul Edge, and memories of the warriors it defeated were crystallized within it. Inferno used the warriors' memories and incorporated them into its own style of fighting. Inferno was even able to create weapons from memory and form them from its body.

The anguish of defeated warriors fueled the brilliance of Inferno's disturbing crimson flames. When Inferno's weapon becomes enveloped with that flame, the world would know the meaning of true fear and despair.

---Stage

Chaos

Chaos is a desolate land created by Inferno and filled with hellfire...

According to legend, this land is made in the image of the place where the demonic blade Soul Edge shows its true self. This place is the physical manifestation of the pain and suffering caused by Soul Edge as it consumes the souls of its victims. However, those who gaze upon these lands may only recognize this as the mesmerizing, beautiful colored lights that shift and dance in the air.

This is the final destination for those who pursue Soul Edge.

---Voice

"Pride"
"Greed"
"Lust"
"Anger"
"Gluttony"
"Envy"
"Sloth"
"Death"
"Pain"
"Suffering"

---Ending

A pillar of light pierced through the clouds to herald the event.

A powerful sword capable of destroying evil, as if in opposition to the surging evil...

For the demon sword seeking stronger souls to consume, it became the ultimate source of power.

The Krita-Yuga was consumed by a wave of evil, and a new sword of chaos was born.

Inferno's cry of joy reverberated as if to reach the entire world.

All hope was lost...And now an era of darkness is about to begin...

=====
=====

4.2 Mission Books

4.2.1 Middle Map

4.2.1.1 Proving Grounds

Proving Grounds 1

You are in the deepest part of the Himalayas. You are in search of an old man known as "Edge Master," a man who has mastered countless types of weaponry.

Your goal is to train with this elder before embarking on your search around the world for the legendary sword Soul Edge.

"Hmmm, you have a hard journey ahead of you..."

The old man crosses his arms and falls silent in contemplation for a moment, and then begins to give you counsel on how to proceed on your journey.

"In order to travel the world in search of new battles, you must first prove yourself in battle..."

"Simply attack the enemy is not always the correct path of achieving victory in battle. You must satisfy the rules of engagement for each contest."

"The rules are written at the end of each mission description in colored letters. Be mindful of the rules as you begin your battle."

"Once you emerge victorious from your battle and earn points, you can select ART GALLERY from the Map Screen menu and purchase Art Cards if you have enough points..."

"If you go forth and purchase the Art Cards, new adventures will come your way. Keep this in mind as you take on new battles..."

The old man grasps his weapon after dispensing his wisdom to you about your journey ahead.

"Although this may come as a surprise, I must see for myself if your fighting skills are worthy... Oh, have no fear. All I ask is for you to defend yourself from my attacks..."

"Remember, you will be injured gravely if you fail to defend yourself!"

***** HINT *****

You must use the Guard move to protect yourself from an enemy's attacks.

Press the G Button to guard.

To protect yourself from attack around your feet, you must guard while in a crouched position to use the Low Guard.

Press the G Button while pressing Down on the Directional Pad for a Low Guard.

If you get stuck on a mission, use the Practice Mode to analyze your performance and improve your fighting skills.

Guard against the elder's attacks.
Survive until the time limit!

Training- Part 1

"Circle around me!"

***** HINT *****

Use the 8 Way Run feature to circle around your opponent. This enables you to move in a circular path with your opponent at the center.

CONTROL METHOD

Quickly press the Directional Pad twice in the Up, Down, Left, or Right direction and continue to press the button down in that direction.

If you keep the Directional Pad down and press another direction, you can freely change the direction of the run.

Use the 8 Way Run to circle around Edge Master once!

Training- Part 2

"Let's see how much you can focus your mind and spirit...Attack me with a Soul Charge attack!"

***** HINT *****

When you press the A+B+K Buttons at the same time, your character will start to charge its energy and glow green.

This is called a Soul Charge.

While the Soul Charge is effective, any move made by your character becomes a counter

A counter occurs when your attack hits the opponent while the opponent is in the middle of an attack or a run. The damage sustained by the opponent during this time is greater than normal. Other effects may also occur as a result of a successful counter.

During the game, you can tell the difference between a regular attack and a counter by checking to see whether the hit

spark given off by an attack is colored red or yellow. If the spark is red, it is a counter. If yellow, it is a normal attack.

Attack Edge Master while in a Soul Charge!

Training- Part 3

"On occasion, a throw is useful against your opponent. Now try and throw me from all sides!"

***** HINT *****

A throw is performed by closin in on the opponent and pressing the two button combination of either A+G or B+G at the same time.

CONTROL METHOD

- Facing front, right, left, or rear side of the opponent:
Press A+G or B+G at the same time.

There are also unique throws for each character that can be performed with special button combinations.

For more information on how to perform throws, refer to the COMMAND LIST that can be displayed from the Pause Menu. You can also learn about the button input timing for these moves by pressing the A Button while in the Practice Mode's COMMAND LIST.

Throw Edge Master from the front, right, left, and rear!

Training- Part 4

"Attack me with all your might! Hit me with an unblockable attack!"

***** HINT *****

An Unblockable attack is a special attack that is available for every character. The move is executed with a different set of button commands for each character.

When an Unblockable hits your opponent,

it will hit even while he is in a guard stance.

To find out how to execute an Unblockable attack, see the COMMAND LIST that can be opened from the Pause Menu. You can also learn about the button input timing for the move by pressing the A Button while in the Practice Mode's COMMAND LIST.

Hit Edge Master with an Unblockable attack!

Training- Part 5

"If you can read the opponent's attack, you can use Guard Impact to your advantage. Judge my attack timing correctly to execute your Guard Impact!"

***** HINT *****

There are two types of Guard Impact that can occur when your opponent attacks.

Quickly pressing the Directional Pad toward the opponent along with the G Button will "repel" the attack.

Quickly pressing the Directional Pad away from the opponent along with the G Button will "parry" the attack instead.

In addition, it is possible to execute Guard Impact against low attacks by either pressing Down Diagonal toward the opponent on the Directional Pad along with the G Button to repel, or Down Diagonal away from the opponent on the Directional Pad with the G Button to parry.

You can also perfect your Guard Impact technique in Practice Mode. Select FREESTYLE SETTINGS from the Pause Menu and then select the GUARD IMPACT item from the menu.

When you attack, the CPU character will execute a Guard Impact and then launch into a counter. Learn to use your Guard Impact when the enemy goes into a counter.

Edge Master will attack repeatedly. Press the Directional Pad and the G Button to execute your Guard Impact!

Proving Grounds 2

Edge Master...A man who has perfected his skills on countless weapons...

You've returned to the place where you once received your training from him

You've honed your fighting skills through countless battles in many places around the world. You've come to challenge the elder to a match once again.

Unfortunately, the old man is nowhere to be found. Instead, bloodthirsty warriors wander the area. Their intent seems to be the same as yours; to take on the elder.

However, Edge Master only needs one opponent in battle- you.

You decide to eliminate the bloodthirsty horde as a kind of a "training exercise" prior to your fight with the elder.

The time limit is extended with each win. Defeat all enemies within the time limit!

Proving Grounds 3

***** EXTRA MISSION *****

You've come back to see the elder after thoroughly training yourself in numerous battles throughout the world.

"It seems you've been busy polishing your skills! Well, let's see just what you've accomplished...Come now, don't hold back and show me your skills!"

Defeat Edge Master!

Proving Grounds 4

***** EXTRA MISSION *****

The time limit is extended with each win. Defeat all enemies within the time limit!

CAUTION! DIFFICULTY LEVEL IS HIGH!

=====

4.2.1.2 Harbor of Souls

Harbor of Souls 1

You are surrounded by a pair of warriors at an Indian port.

It appears that you have attracted the notice of the locals because of your inquiries about the evil sword Soul Edge as well as by your appearance.

A little while ago, you came across a disturbing rumor that the entire crew of a pirate ship was annihilated here. What disturbs you the most was that the crew met its fate at the hands of a group of strange monsters...

Ever since that event, rumors of an evil sword have spread like wildfire throughout the port and filled the hearts of the people with worry. These warriors who surround you now seem to have something to do with this.

There is no profit at all in fighting here at this time. However, your attackers have already drawn their weapons and made their challenge to you. There is no escaping this situation...

Defeat both enemies!

Harbor of Souls 2

Significant advances in seafaring technologies were made during the sixteenth century. This port was a reflection of these times; the port is normally filled with the hustle and bustle of trading ships...

...But the city has now been plunged into a state of restless gloom.

You were in a hurry. You heard that the same monsters that were rumored to be here once before appeared at a nearby port.

You had to act. You manage to find a ship that is about to set sail for that port and negotiate with her captain. Confident in your abilities, you offer your services as a guard...

"Sorry...we already have a guard on our ship..."

Unfazed, you make a counterproposal. "The monsters may not be at the port when you get there. Why not test the skill of your guard now to ensure your safety?"

"Heh, there won't be any mercy..."

A young man dressed in colorful clothing pushes aside the captain and stands before you. He seems to be the ship's guard.

The wind starts to blow fiercely and a storm is about to begin as in your previous battle here.

The ship is about to set sail. You must quickly prove your worth against this guard.

Defeat the enemy within the time limit!

Harbor of Souls 3

***** EXTRA MISSION *****

You become faster as your Life Bar decreases.
Defeat both enemies!

Harbor of Souls 4

***** EXTRA MISSION *****

Defeat both enemies within the time limit!

CAUTION! DIFFICULTY LEVEL IS HIGH!

=====
=====

4.2.1.3 Silk Road Ruins

Silk Road Ruins 1

You are in a desert somewhere in Central Asia.

To seek respite from the unforgiving rays of the afternoon sun, you decide to seek shelter in some ancient ruin.

"...An enemy?"

Just as you are about to take your rest, you notice the presence of someone coming from behind you.

You grab your weapon and immediately engage the foe in this ruin.

And then something unexpected happens.

Your feet are swallowed by the sand!

At this rate, you will not be able to move as you wish and open yourself to attacks as a result.

Sand will bury your feet and make your movements slower if you do not run.
Defeat Hwang!

Silk Road Ruins 2

The nighttime desert is extremely cold when compared with the merciless heat of the afternoon sun.

Although you came here to seek protection from the heat once before, you now suffer from the bitter cold instead...

As you marvel at the irony of it all, you notice a shadow moving towards you. Could it be a bandit?

But this time, you have a strategy against the enemy.

You manage to force him into the area of the ruins that has basically turned into a sand trap. Your intent is to attack him while he is immobilized by the sand.

On top of that, poisonous insects would be active in the sand at this time of day.

Unfortunately, the enemy somehow manages to keep his foot in the sand. As you look around your feet, you realize that during nighttime, the area is not as dry as during the day.

You have no option now but to attack the enemy and force him into becoming prey for these poisonous insects.

If you are hit, you will slip into the sand and lose your strength from poisonous insect bites. You must hit the enemy to rid yourself of the poison. Defeat Hwang!

Silk Road Ruins 3

***** EXTRA MISSION *****

Sand will bury your feet and make your movements slower if you do not run. Defeat both enemies!

Silk Road Ruins 4

***** EXTRA MISSION *****

If you are hit, you will slip into the sand and lose your strength from poisonous insect bites until you hit the enemy! Defeat both enemies!

CAUTION! DIFFICULTY LEVEL IS HIGH!

=====
=====

4.2.1.4 Kunpaetku Shrine

Kunpaetku Shrine 1

While traveling through various regions throughout western Asia, you hear about a lizard-like beast. You suspect that a dark order practicing black magic in this area is somehow responsible for it.

You discover that this group has a hidden

shrine beneath the desert, and you decide to infiltrate it.

The interior of the shrine is laid out with complex, labyrinthian passageways.

You head to the central altar of the shrine first since it appears to be lightly guarded. Unfortunately, this strategy backfires.

Suddenly, a foul-smelling gas fills the area. Overwhelmed by the poisonous gas, your strength begins to drain away.

An armed pair of the order's members appear. They have already anticipated your arrival.

Your strength is being drained by poison. Defeat both enemies!

Kunpaetku Shrine 2

You've been captured by members of the dark order and thrown into a prison cell inside the underground shrine. It's unlikely that they'll allow you to live for long. You plot your escape plan inside your cell.

Several days later, you manage to escape, but that is only the beginning of your problems. You find it extremely difficult to find a path out of the underground shrine to the surface.

After wandering for several hours, you arrive at a narrow footbridge that leads to the path out of the shrine. The area around the bridge is a swamp that gives off poisonous gas, but going through this area is your only hope of escape.

You quickly run across the bridge. However, halfway across, you face the unexpected. Suddenly, both ends of the bridge begin to crumble and fall away!

A group of sword-wielding lizards appear on this narrow bridge and begin to close in. Although they are numerous in number, they seem to be underlings.

You have no choice now but to fight them all and break through.

The width of the bridge is extremely narrow, making throws impossible. Defeat 5 or more lizards and survive until the time limit!

Kunpaetku Shrine 3

***** EXTRA MISSION *****

Your strenght is bein drained by poison. Defeat all enemies!

Kunpaetku Shrine 4

***** EXTRA MISSION *****

The width of the bridge is extremely narrow, making throws impossible. Defeat 5 or more enemies and survive until the time limit!

CAUTION! DIFFICULTY LEVEL IS HIGH!

=====
=====

4.2.1.5 Palgaea Shrine

Palgaea Shrine 1

There is a dark order searching for Soul Edge. Their main shrine is located underground beneath a desert.

You are now unconscious, captured by the order. The grand priest of the evil order intends to perform diabolical experiments on your body because of your notoriety as a warrior.

And thus, you are now being carried to their altar hall...

However, you regain consciousness as you're exposed to the heat within the shrine. You jump the guard priests at the first opportunity and procure a weapon. The only thing left now is to escape...

Alas, a powerful force field has been

projected along the perimeter of the altar hall to prevent your escape. If you should step into this field, you would surely receive a blow that would throw your body across the hall.

The enemy begins to close in on you. You summon your strength for the impending battle.

Stepping on the edge of the stage will blow you away and cause damage.
Defeat all the enemies!

Palgaea Shrine 2

Kunpaetku, the evil grand priest of the dark order has ordered his minions to search for Soul Edge...

When you hear this story, you become concerned about the potential threat to you that might come from the giant whom you engaged in mortal combat before.

You decide to see for yourself if the giant was alive or not. And so you infiltrate the order's shrine this time.

You disguise yourself as a priest and make your search throughout the shrine. But something goes awry when you arrive at an all too familiar altar.

The brethren of the order somehow saw through your deception and dispatched assassins who surround you now.

But there is something odd about these assassins. Your body is naturally repelled away from them! It's almost as if you're fighting Cervantes again!

From the stories you've heard, the members of this dark order have the power to control a person's body and soul. The force that is repelling you must be a manifestation of their black arts.

The enemy has the power to constantly repel you. In addition, stepping on the edge of the stage will blow you away and cause damage.
Defeat both enemies!

Palgaea Shrine 3

***** EXTRA MISSION *****

Stepping on the edge of the stage will
blow you away and cause damage.
Defeat all the enemies!

Palgaea Shrine 4

***** EXTRA MISSION *****

The enemy has the power to constantly
repel you. In addition, steppin on the
edge of the stage will blow you away and
cause damage.
Defeat all the enemies!

CAUTION! DIFFICULTY LEVEL IS HIGH!

=====
=====

4.2.1.6 Maze of the Dead

Maze of the Dead 1

This is an underground ruins somewhere in
Turkey where ancient treasures are said to
lie. No one has successfully retrieved
treasures from the depths of the
labyrinth-like ruins and escaped with
their lives.

It's been more than ten hours since you
began your search, but you still wander
through the ruins.

However, you still feel unusually strong.
In fact, strangely enough, you find that
your agility is increased if you focus
your mind and spirit.

Although there is no way for you to know,
these effects are caused by vapors from
the moss that grows in abundance within
the labyrinth.

Several hours later, you finally stumble
upon the exit. But a stranger stands in
your way.

A Soul Charge increases your speed.
Defeat both enemies!

Maze of the Dead 2

Wounded by a surprise attack from an unknown enemy, you've come to these underground ruins to escape.

However, you still sense the presence of the enemy in the ruins. Without question, the enemy has followed you here.

During the attack, you were poisoned through your wounds. As a result, your body is becoming numb. You feel your strength draining away...

You find a hall in front of you and decide that you will confront the enemy here instead of running away.

Fortunately, the effects of the poison have not completely taken over your body.

If you focus your mind and spirit and take a deep breath, it is possible to regain some of your health.

You must take advantage of this technique when you fight the enemy.

The poison will slowly drain your health, but a Soul Charge will restore it.
Defeat both enemies!

Maze of the Dead 3

***** EXTRA MISSION *****

A Soul Charge increases your speed.
Defeat both enemies!

Maze of the Dead 4

***** EXTRA MISSION *****

The poison will slowly drain your health, but a Soul Charge will restore it

Defeat both enemies!

CAUTION! DIFFICULTY LEVEL IS HIGH!

=====

4.2.2 Left Map

4.2.2.1 Ostrheinsburg Castle

Ostrheinsburg Castle 1

These are the ruins of Ostrheinsburg Castle and the residence of Nightmare, the leader of the "Schwarzstrom" (Black Storm).

Your pulse quickens with the knowledge that you are standing on a former battle field where countless people lost their souls. And there is a voice in your head repeatedly calling out for you with the following words...

"Souls...more souls..."

As your free will slips away, you realize that your body and soul have been transformed into that of a crazed warrior.

You see the figure of a lone knight as you lose your consciousness.

"My sword, lend me your powers..."

The knight seemed to be summoning something from the gigantic sword in his hand. The sword's "eye" opens unexpectedly and stares at you.

"Soul Edge!!"

You allow your instinct to take over and take up your weapon. You charge the knight Nightmare who possesses the demon sword, Soul Edge. There's nothing to lose now!

***** HINT *****

In this mission, no moves are guardable. Moreover, all attacks become counters.

A counter occurs when your attack hits the opponent while the opponent is in the middle of an attack or a run. The damage that the opponent sustains during this time is greater than normal. Other effects may also occur as a result of a successful

counter.

During the game, you can tell the difference between a regular attack and a counter by checking to see whether the hit spark given off by an attack is colored red or yellow. If the spark is red, it is a counter. If yellow, it is a normal attack.

Change the COUNTER menu item settings in the Practice Mode Pause Menu to ATTACK, BACK DASH, or RUN to see the different outcomes for the counters.

Any attack becomes a counter and no moves are guardable.
Defeat Nightmare!

Ostrheinsburg Castle 2

You still cannot forget that sensation.

The incredible rush of power coursing throughout your body...

You do not realize that this is the same effect from the Evil Seed experienced before you by the likes of Cervantes, Siegfried and Kilik. In any event, it was an experience that was unforgettable.

And now, you stand in once again on the ruins of this former battlefield. You see a lone figure in the distance.

It is a warrior who is afflicted with the powers of the Evil Seed just like you... As you prepare to engage this warrior in battle, you begin to wonder whether the knight who wields Soul Edge will appear again.

***** HINT *****

In this mission, all attacks become counters for you as well as the enemy.

A counter occurs when your attack hits the opponent while the opponent is in the middle of an attack or a run. The damage that the opponent sustains during this time is greater than normal. Other effects may also occur as a result of a successful counter.

During the game, you can tell the

difference between a regular attack and a counter by checking to see whether the hit spark given off by an attack is colored red or yellow. If the spark is red, it is a counter. If yellow, it is a normal attack.

Change the COUNTER menu item settings in the Practice Mode Pause Menu to ATTACK, BACK DASH, or RUN to see the different outcomes for the counters.

All attacks become counters when they hit.
Defeat all the enemies!

Ostrheinsburg Castle 3

***** EXTRA MISSION *****

Any attack becomes a counter.
Defeat all the enemies!

Ostrheinsburg Castle 4

***** EXTRA MISSION *****

All attacks become counters when they hit.
Defeat Inferno!

CAUTION! DIFFICULTY LEVEL IS HIGH!

=====
=====

4.2.2.2 City of Water

City of Water 1

You are on a bridge that spans the canals of Venice, the City of Water.

Atop the bridge, a stranger stumbles into you unexpectedly. He is out of breath, as if he has run a long distance. You notice that he has a weapon in his hand as well.

You attempt to leave, but you hear a voice calling out for you to stop.

"Do you think you can escape?!!"

The owner of the voice has drawn his sword and now blocks the path for both you and the stranger. You turn around to see that another armed warrior blocks your only remaining escape route.

These armed warriors now attack you. It seems that this is a case of mistaken identity- they believe that you are a compatriot of the stranger.

You try in vain to explain that you do not know the stranger. However, your attempts fall on deaf ears.

Cooperate with the stranger.
Defeat both enemies!

City of Water 2

Venice, the City of Water. You stand alone on a bridge that spans the canals.

You cannot recall what happened yesterday. Judging from the new scratches on your weapon, you could have been involved in some scuffle for all you know.

Two warriors appear and grab your arms. They both say, "Leave quickly from here."

You are confused by this sudden turn of events. Who are these two?

However, there was no time for you to ponder your situation. The three of you are surrounded by a group who appear to be after all of you.

You can't comprehend what's going on, but it's clear that you are now being chased along with these two warriors.

You have no choice but to fight alongside these warriors.

Cooperate with the unknown warriors.
Defeat all enemies within the time limit!

City of Water 3

Cooperate with the stranger.
Defeat both enemies!

City of Water 4

***** EXTRA MISSION *****

Cooperate with the unknown warrior.
Defeat all enemies within the time limit!

CAUTION! DIFFICULTY LEVEL IS HIGH!

=====
=====

4.2.2.3 The Colosseum

The Colosseum 1

You arrive at the remains of an ancient coliseum.

It seems that a fight is going on here with prize money awarded to the victor. This is a golden opportunity for you to earn some badly needed money for your travels.

You hear that the prize money is a paltry sum at first, but the money is supposed to multiplied by the number of wins.

However, all your winnings will be forfeited if you lose. In other words, you must fight your opponents while keeping an eye on your health.

***** HINT *****

In this mission, you have the choice of continuing the battle every time you win or quitting to collect your winnings.

You can complete this mission by simply winning a single round and quitting or defeating all the enemies that appear.

In other words, if you are not concerned about earning prize money, you can quit after you win your first battle.

The prize money doubles with each win.
Watch the Life Bar to gauge your health.
Defeat the enemies for prize money!

The Colosseum 2

As you continue your journey, you revisit the Colosseum. You hear the voices of a crowd echo from within as if a match has just begun.

What kind of contest goes on inside?

Your curiosity motivates your feet to step inside the Colosseum.

The rules of the contest seem to be the same as before.

The prize money is still awarded based on the number of opponents you defeat. The prize doubles per each win, but you forfeit everything if you lose. It's difficult to decide when to quit.

However, this time, the stakes are higher. Two more battles were added to the contest. In other words, a contestant who wins all the matches could win four times as much prize money than before.

If you can win this much money, you can live on easy street for a while.

What will you do now?

***** HINT *****

In this mission, you have the choice of continuing the battle every time you win or quitting to collect your winnings.

You can complete this mission by simply winning a single round and quitting or defeating all the enemies that appear.

In other words, if you are not concerned about earning prize money, you can quit after you win your first battle.

The prize money doubles per each win.
Use the Life Bar to measure you health.
Defeat the enemies for prize money!

The Colosseum 3

***** EXTRA MISSION *****

The prize money doubles per each win.
Use the Life Bar to measure your health.
Defeat the enemies for prize money!

The Colosseum 4

***** EXTRA MISSION *****

The prize money doubles per each win.
Use the Life Bar to measure your health.
Defeat the enemies for prize money!

CAUTION! DIFFICULTY LEVEL IS HIGH!

=====
=====

4.2.2.4 Shrine of Eurydice

Shrine of Eurydice 1

Hephaestus... Several years ago, when Soul Edge disappeared along with Cervantes, a young woman's cry calling out this name could be heard throughout this place.

You learn that Hephaestus is the name of the ancient Greek god of fire and smithery and decide to head to a shrine dedicated to the worship of this god.

This shrine is located far above the clouds and icy, freezing winds blow without mercy there. You find yourself shielding your face from this unbearable wind.

When you raise your head again, a warrior enveloped in light stands before you. Was this warrior sent by the gods?

The wind blows with increasing intensity. One false move and you will be carried away.

The strong winds will carry you away...
Defeat both enemies!

Shrine of Eurydice 2

You are at a shrine dedicated to
Hephaestus, the ancient god of fire and
smithery.

If Soul Edge was the "Ultimate Sword of
Evil" as rumored, a sword forged by the
hands of a god would be necessary to fight
against it. You believed this to be true,
so you have come to this shrine again.

However, this god still believes that you
are the enemy.

In a matter of moments, light pours down
from the heavens to reveal a lone warrior
standing before your eyes. She is
Sophitia, the warrior chosen by the gods.

As she gives her prayers to the gods, her
body becomes enveloped in a pale light
that emanates from where she stands, It
appears that the floor of this shrine
provides her "Divine Protection."

Sophitia cannot be damaged while she
remains on the stage.
Defeat her with a ring out!

Shrine of Eurydice 3

***** EXTRA MISSION *****

Strong winds carry you away...
Defeat all the enemies!

Shrine of Eurydice 4

***** EXTRA MISSION *****

Sophitia cannot be damaged while she
remains on the stage and ring outs are
not effective either.
Defeat her with a mid-air combo!

CAUTION!

DIFFICULTY LEVEL IS HIGH DEPENDING ON
CHARACTER CHOSEN.

=====

4.2.2.5 Money Pit

Money Pit 1

You've come to a nameless island somewhere in the Mediterranean Sea and found your way into a deep pit called the "Money Pit."

It is said that the vast fortunes of Vercci, the merchant of death, lie here.

There are traps located throughout to foil intruders. You've managed to negotiate all of them and finally arrived at the central section of the pit. But then...

...You sense that there is another living being here besides yourself.

Something attacks! Is it some beast? A thief? Or could it be the rumored guardian of this place?

The rats on the floor bite your feet.
Defeat both enemies!

Money Pit 2

You've come again to this solitary island to check on the rumor that there is a memoir containing the clues about the location of Soul Edge hidden somewhere amongst Vercci's treasures.

You infiltrate the Money Pit once again, avoiding traps along the way. But this time, you manage to go down deeper than before.

The guardian of the pit is nowhere to be found. As you head further down, there is still no sign of the enemy or the memoir. However, you catch the glint of a weapon in the corner of your eye at the very moment you set foot on the deepest part of the pit

The enemy! ...But you see no signs of life here. Could this be Voldo, the guardian of the Money Pit!

No! How could this be?! The only thing you see is a weapon dancing in the air. Could it be...

You remember a story about how Vercci collected "cursed weapons" like Soul Edge. Could the weapon you see before your very eyes be one of them?

You can only see the enemy's weapon. Defeat all the enemies!

Money Pit 3

***** EXTRA MISSION *****

The rats on the floor bite your feet. Defeat both enemies!

Money Pit 4

***** EXTRA MISSION *****

You can only see the enemy's weapon. Defeat all the enemies!

CAUTION! DIFFICULTY LEVEL IS HIGH!

=====

4.2.2.6 The Adrian and the Fortress

The Adrian and the Fortress 1

The legendary pirate Cervantes is said to have been the owner of the demonic sword Soul Edge.

You hear a rumor that Cervantes has been spotted somewhere in Spain, so you make your way there.

The fortress at the edge of the ocean was in ruins. Although this place is devoid of humanity, it is filled with a dark, forboding atmosphere.

Could this be caused by the Evil Seed?

As you look around you, you see a figure emerge from a ship anchored near the fortress.

You are simply overwhelmed by the presence of the man. As he takes one step after another towards you, you find yourself being pushed backwards by some invisible force!

The ocean draws near behind you. At this rate, there is no hope of keeping your footing. You'll probably end up falling into the sea.

The enemy is constantly pushing you away, but there is no way to keep your footing. Avoid falling off the stage and defeat Cervantes!

The Adrian and the Fortress 2

The resurrection of the drea pirate Cervantes was no illusion.

However, it is not known how or why he was resurrected or what he seeks as he travels around the world.

You hear that Cervantes has appeared at the fortress again and head towards the ocean.

The battle began suddenly. Cervantes was more powerful than before. The invisible force that pushes you back is still present.

The enemy is constantly pushing you away, but there is no way to keep your footing. He also has a powerful strike that can blow you assunder. Avoid falling off the stage and defeat Cervantes!

The Adrian and the Fortress 3

***** EXTRA MISSION *****

The enemy is constantly pushing you away, but there is no way to keep your footing. Avoid falling off the stage and defeat the enemies!

The Adrian and the Fortress 4

***** EXTRA MISSION *****

The enemy is constantly pushing you away,
but there is no way to keep your footing.
He also has a powerful strike that can
blow you away.
Avoid falling off the stage and defeat
the enemies!

CAUTION! DIFFICULTY LEVEL IS HIGH!

=====
=====

4.2.2.7 Valentine Mansion

Valentine Mansion 1

You are now in a mansion where the late
Count Valentine is said to have performed
various ceremonies. At this moment, you
are being attacked by an enemy within the
walls of this mansion.

During the battle, you notice a strange
phenomenon occur before your eyes. The
movement of the enemy appears to suddenly
quicken or slow down for no reason.

Could this be an effect of some curse or
sorcery that was performed here in the
past?

It almost seems as if the enemy you're
fighting is surrounded by some unseen
supernatural force that bends the flow of
time.

The enemy's movement speed changes without
warning.
Defeat both enemies!

Valentine Mansion 2

This mansion is devoid of souls.

The late Count Valentine squandered his

riches on alchemic research and brought ruin to his family.

You've come here again after you realize that the true reason for the research was the study of a certain sword...

Soul Edge...

Yes, the Count was researching the very sword you were after. If that was the case, there must be some clue left in this mansion about its whereabouts.

You realize that something strange has happened soon after you begin your search of the mansion...

Your weapon is nowhere to be found.

No, the truth is that you can no longer see your weapon. You still feel its weight and texture.

Although this is a mysterious phenomenon, could it be just another of the many supernatural events that occur here?

But somehow, something doesn't feel right. What if you were attacked by someone now?

...Just then, you hear a noise coming from behind you.

You can't see your weapon or your enemy's. Defeat all the enemies!

Valentine Mansion 3

***** EXTRA MISSION *****

The enemy's movement speed changes without warning.
Defeat both enemies!

Valentine Mansion 4

***** EXTRA MISSION *****

You can't see your weapon or your enemy's. Defeat all the enemies!

CAUTION! DIFFICULTY LEVEL IS HIGH!

=====

4.2.3 Right Map

4.2.3.1 Emperor's Garden

Emperor's Garden 1

You have come to the great empire of the Ming in East Asia. You are here at the request of one of the Ming's generals to appear in an exhibition fight to be held before the imperial nobility.

According to the general, he wants you to demonstrate your famed fighting skills in front of his Emperor.

You are told that if you win the match, you can ask for anything as a reward. You decide to accept the offer. However, there was one rule for the contest-

"The first fighter to get 16 hits against his opponent shall be judged victorious."

Strength is not necessary to win in this match. You will need to use many fast moves instead. With this in mind, you step upon the battle stage...

***** HINT *****

You must learn to use attack moves that can be executed quickly to hit the opponent many times.

You can check the speed of a move by opening the COMMAND LIST from the Pause Menu and pressing the A Button after selecting a move.

Hit the enemy 16 times first and win!

Emperor's Garden 2

In the past, you appeared before the Ming Empire's nobility in an exhibition fight. This time, you are staying in an imperial mansion as a guest of the general.

In your last appearance here, you heard

a curious tale from a government official. It seems the Emperor ordered a search for Soul Edge, the "Hero's Sword." Even a search party has been dispatched in this effort.

Yes, your true objective here is to get the information collected by the Emperor about Soul Edge. Perhaps Soul Edge itself might be in the possession of the Emperor.

Several days later, you make your move when the mansion's guards are distracted.

First, you must take care of the Emperor's personal guards. You must use your most powerful moves in order to insure that they are completely neutralized!

***** HINT *****
The key to successfully completing this mission lies in your ability to use throws as well as Unblockable attack moves.

Open the COMMAND LIST from the Practice Mode or the Pause Menu to learn how to pull off Unblockables.

Use Unblockable attacks or throws.
Defeat Xianghua!

Emperor's Garden 3

***** EXTRA MISSION *****

Hit the enemy 16 times first and win!

Emperor's Garden 4

***** EXTRA MISSION *****

Use Unblockable attacks or throws.
Defeat all the enemies!

CAUTION! DIFFICULTY LEVEL IS HIGH!

=====
=====

4.2.3.2 Takamatsu Castle

Takamatsu Castle 1

You stand in the midst of a battlefield where the skies are filled with arrows and bullets.

Takamatsu Castle is where you stand. The castle now stands in a lake because of a man-made flood engineered to break down its defenses.

Once again, you board your boat to join your comrades in battle. But as you near the middle of the lake, a stranger boards your boat.

...The Enemy! In battle, there is no room to lower your guard against the foe. Failure can only mean one thing...Death.

***** HINT *****
The key to completing this mission is your ability to knock down the opponent.

Use the Practice Mode to learn what moves will enable you to accomplish this task.

You lose if you are knocked down. Knock down all the enemies instead and fight to the end!

Takamatsu Castle 2

Flooded during the summer campaigns, Takamatsu Castle now faces winter under water.

Injured several days ago in a meaningless altercation, you return by boat alone to Takamatsu Castle.

No one followed you here. With luck, some rest should help you regain your strength.

Alas, a shadowy figure has followed you. What does he want?

Before another thought enters your mind, the shadow makes its move and attacks!

You are weak, but you will regain your health with time.
Defeat all the enemies!

Takamatsu Castle 3

***** EXTRA MISSION *****

You lose if you are knocked down.
Knock down all the enemies instead and
fight to the end!

Takamatsu Castle 4

***** EXTRA MISSION *****

You are weak, but you will regain your
health with time.
Defeat Mitsurugi!

=====

4.2.3.3 Hoko Temple

Hoko Temple 1

You've come to Japan in the hopes of
tracking down the ninja Taki, who is
rumored to possess a fragment of Soul
Edge.

You are now in Kyoto, standing before a
giant Buddha statue built in an
underground hall of the Hoko Temple.
You've learned that Taki frequents this
hall, so you decide to wait for her here.

You sense that the hall is filled with
strange spiritual energy...

"Be gone..."

You hear the cold, dagger-like words of a
woman coming from behind you.

The woman...she is Taki. She stands on the
palm of the Buddha, looking down upon you.

You instinctually pull out your weapon and
attack Taki. When you move, you are
surprised at how powerful you've become.
Could it be that you were somehow

strengthened by the spiritual energy while you waited in the hall?

Taki leaps into the air and answers your attack at the center of the stage.

"Shyaaaaaa!"

Taki crosses her blades and focuses her spirit. Then, a powerful spiritual energy starts to discharge from her swords.

The attack blows of both you and the enemy have increased in power. Defeat both enemies!

Hoko Temple 2

The hall of the giant Buddha in the Hoko Temple is filled with evil spiritual energy.

Built by Toyotomi Hideyoshi during his reign, the giant Buddha statue is full of supernatural powers. It would not be out of place for Soul Edge to exist here.

You still sense the same spiritual energy here as before.

"What a foll...back again..."

With those words, a shadow flies over your head and stops at the center of the stage.

The last fight should have settled everything...

You feel certain that your attacks against the previous enemies were effective. However, the shadow...Taki appears as if nothing happened. Could she be immortal?

In reality, these mysterious happenings were actually caused by the evil spirit Gel-o-fury, and not the gian Buddha as once thought. In fact, the spirit was headed here via the underground rivers that run through this area.

But just before your arrival, Taki captured the spirit and managed to absorb its evil energies into her sword!

Taki also restored her health with the healing effects of the spiritaul energy radiating from her sword.

Taki heals herself over time.
Defeat her!

Hoko Temple 3

***** EXTRA MISSION *****

The attack blows of both you and the
enemy have increased in power.
Defeat both enemies!

Hoko Temple 4

***** EXTRA MISSION *****

Taki heals herself over time.
Defeat her!

CAUTION! DIFFICULTY LEVEL IS HIGH!

=====
=====

4.2.3.4 Water Labyrinth

Water Labyrinth 1

There are large, undiscovered rivers that
flow underground throughout the islands of
Japan. An intesnse spiritual energy now
lingers throughout these rivers.

This energy is concentrated around a giant
Buddha in Kyoto. Believing that there is
something at the source of this energy,
you discover these underground rivers
during your quest for the source.

While searching these rivers on a raft,
you are attacked by someone. The enemy has
come alongside and boarded your raft.

However, something is amiss. Although
your attacker is extremely agile, you do
not get the sense that he is alive.

Suddenly, something strange occurs. An
indescribable wail-like voice begins to
fill your head and your body starts to

feel light...

"It's a curse!"

After you receive a small wound, your instinct tells you that the curse feeds on the pain and suffering of its victims.

Knowing this, you must now injure the enemy to transfer the curse to him!

The pain of the poisonous curse spreads slowly throughout your body...There is no time to spare!

If you receive damage, you lose your health and your movement becomes faster until you injure the enemy.
Defeat the enemy!

Water Labyrinth 2

You are traveling by raft on a great underground river near the sacred Mount Fuji.

In your previous quest, you learned about the existence of the "Manji Clan." You are exploring these rivers to find out about what the clan has been protecting throughout the ages.

As you make your way on the river, a dense atmosphere charged with spiritual energy envelops you. This energy is full of evil and your health gradually deteriorates.

And then the enemy appears. The enemy must have been waiting for you to become weaker...

Could this be someone sent from the Manji Clan?

Your strength deteriorates with time.
Defeat all enemies!

Water Labyrinth 3

***** EXTRA MISSION *****

If you receive damage, you lose your health and your movement becomes faster until you injure the enemy.

Defeat all enemies!

Water Labyrinth 4

***** EXTRA MISSION *****

You've been poisoned by a nunchaku
wielding enemy.

Your strength deteriorates with time and
ring outs are not effective.
Defeat Maxi!

CAUTION! DIFFICULTY LEVEL IS HIGH!

=====
=====

4.2.4 Special Missions

4.2.4.1 Pit/Swamp

Pit

***** SPECIAL MISSION 1 *****

"What the?!"

You fall into a pit.

This place seems to be cursed with a spell
that turns you invisible when you are hit.

You or the enemy will turn invisible if
hit!
Defeat the enemy!

Swamp

***** SPECIAL MISSION 2 *****

"What is all this mud?!"

You are trapped in a muddy swamp.

This place is filled with the avenging
souls of the warriors whom you have
dispatched.

If you do not watch out, you will be

sucked into the ground! On top of this,
the swamp seems to be extremely poisonous!

If you do not move, you will lose your
strength and get trapped in mud!
Defeat the enemy!

=====
=====

4.2.4.2 Secret Dojo

Secret Dojo- Basement

***** SPECIAL MISSION 1 *****

This is a secret dojo built by Seung Han
Myong to train his daughter, Seung Mina.

Basement floor. Enemies are good guys.

The daughter hates rats.

The rules are unknown.
Defeat all the enemies!

Secret Dojo- First Floor

***** SPECIAL MISSION 2 *****

This a secret dojo built by Seung Han
Myong to train his daughter, Seung Mina.

First floor garden.

His daughter trains hard even during the
beautiful seasons when a young child
should be playing outside.

The rules are unknown.
Defeat both enemies!

Secret Dojo- Second Floor

***** SPECIAL MISSION 3 *****

This a secret dojo built by Seung Han
Myong to train his daughter, Seung Mina.

Second floor.

He still treats his daughter like a child.

The rules are unknown.

Defeat the enemy!

Secret Dojo- Attic

***** SPECIAL MISSION 4 *****

This a secret dojo built by Seung Han Myong to train his daughter, Seung Mina.

Attic floor. There are only women here.

The daughter hit her father and ran away several years ago...

The rules are unknown.
Defeat all the enemies!

Secret Dojo- Rooftop

***** SPECIAL MISSION 5 *****

This a secret dojo built by Seung Han Myong to train his daughter, Seung Mina.

Rooftop. Finished.

Several years later, the daughter ran away again...

The rules are unknown.
Defeat the enemy!

=====
=====

4.2.4.3 Chaos

Chaos 1

As you travel throughout the world and survive battle after battle, you come closer to finding the demonic blade.

However, just as you think you've come close to finding the sword, you are unexpectedly pulled into a vortex that takes you to another world.

"Where...am...I?" You are surprised and confused by all of this.

Suddenly, someone attacks out of nowhere. Was the enemy also pulled into this world? There was not time to think. And so began

the battle.

While you fight, you slowly understand what is going on. You still exist as flesh and blood. And in this world, any physical or psychological damage you cause against the opponent becomes sustenance for your strength.

To live by consuming the life force of others...This is the natural law of survival in this alien world.

The damage you give to the enemy becomes your strength.
Defeat both enemies!

Chaos 2

You are close to finding the demonic blade. Although you were pulled into this alien world without warning before, this time it's different.

This time, you are here out of your own free will. You've come to this place to find out the true nature of the hellfire that radiates from Soul Edge.

You feel that if you survive the battle and discover the meaning of the hellfire, new worlds will be opened to you...

However, things aren't as easy as the last time. As you stand here, the poisonous environment of this world eats away your health.

A shadowy figure appears and challenges you to a battle.

To live by consuming the lives of others...You remember the law of survival in this alien world.

The poisonous effects of this world consume your health, but the damage you give to the enemy becomes your strength.
Defeat all the enemies!

=====
=====

5. Soul Calibur II

5.0 Japanese site (Japanese font needed to view, such as MingLiu)

5.0.1 History

5.0.1.00 Prologue

ここに、ソウルエッジと呼ばれる剣にまつわる様々な伝説がある。ある噂曰く、最強の武器。他の噂では英雄の剣。そして強い霊力を宿した妖剣。不老不死への鍵。この上ない秘宝。万病の薬、救国の剣...

その所在、真偽は不明のまま噂だけが様々な伝説・伝承として世界中に広がるソウルエッジ。だがその正体は、人の魂を喰らう二本一組の邪剣であった...!

時は流れ十六世紀後半。邪剣の力を危惧した古き鍛冶神の神託を受けた戦士によって邪剣の片方が破壊されたが、これはその意思とは裏腹に大きな悲劇をもたらす結果となった。バランスを崩した邪気が、その場に留まる術を知らず暴走したのだ。後にイヴィルスパームと呼ばれる怪光現象として空へ散った邪気は全世界にその爪痕を残した...

残る一本の邪剣もまた、己を握った男の精神を支配して連続虐殺事件を引き起こし、ヨーロッパ中を恐怖で包み込んだのである。

だが、三年も経つと虐殺は起きなくなり、さらに四年が流れる頃には人々にとって忌まわしき事件は過去の出来事となった。

...誰も知らなかった。

四年前、荒れるソウルエッジに呼応するかのように東方から現れた霊剣ソウルキャリバーの事。それぞれの使い手を介した激しい死闘の末、邪剣が砕けた事。そして邪剣の暴走を押えるために、霊剣が邪気に満ちた空間に置き去られた事...

そう、大多数の人間は今の安息の裏にそのような戦いがあったことはおろか、霊剣の存在すら知らなかったのだ...

その見かけの安息の裏で邪剣は静かに、だが確実に再び世界を覆い始めている。邪剣は大小様々な数多の欠片の形をとり、人の手によって今や世界中に広がっていたのだ！そしてそれらは、未だ忌まわしき邪気を失ってはいなかったのである。

霊剣が虚空へと失われた今、邪剣の影響が世界を蝕むのは時間の問題だった...

これから紐解くは、それぞれが信念と理由を以ってソウルエッジを追った者達の、『剣と魂の物語』...

5.0.1.01 Astaroth

年齢： 不明 再生したばかり 誕生後7年経過
出身： 不明
身長： 202cm
体重： 130kg
武器名： ジャイアントアックス／クルトウエス
流派： ギュルクス

人の怨念を喰らいつづけ、砕けてなお世界を覆わんとしている邪剣ソウルエッジ...。その力に気づいた神はオリンポスの鍛冶神へパイストスだけではなかった。へパイストスがソウルエッジに危惧の念を抱いたのに対し、純粹にソウルエッジが持つ力に興味を持った神もまた、存在したのだ。戦争を司るアレスにとって、邪剣ソウルエッジの忌まわしき由来や習性は大きな問題ではなかったと見える。彼はソウルエッジを手元に置くことを望んだ。同じオリンポスに属する二人の神の邪剣を巡る思惑は、やがてそれぞれが人間界に介入する結果となったのである。

戦争神が目をとめたのは、彼を「執行者パルギア」としてあがめる砂漠の邪教集団であった。啓示を受け、ソウルエッジを入手するための使者の用意を命じられた大神官クンベトクーはその秘術を駆使して一体のゴーレムを創り上げる。大神官は彼に強力な呪いを込めた特製の大斧と、アスタロスという名を

与えて邪剣探索へと送り出した…。

神が求めるほどの力…。密かにソウルエッジを手にする野望を抱く大神官ではあったが、神を欺くことは容易ではない。大神官は知るよしもなかったが、実はアスタロスには、戦争神に従い戦場を駆ける死の司ケールが宿っていたのだ…!

直接の創造者である大神官の思惑とは裏腹に、戦争神に邪剣を捧げるべく行動するアスタロス。

首尾よく邪剣を探し出したものの、邪陰はその半身を失い、その力は激減していた。

このような状態のソウルエッジを主が望むわけがないと判断したアスタロスは、当時の邪剣の持ち主であったナイトメアに従って虐殺を重ね、邪剣の力を高める事に専念していた。

三年も経つころには邪剣の力も回復し、いよいよナイトメアから邪剣を奪う瞬間が近づいてきた…!

しかしアスタロスはその時を待たずして、彼を仲間の仇と追ってきた男との戦いによって破壊されてしまったのである。虐殺を重ねた彼は多くの恨みを受ける身となっていたのだ。

その恨みの中の、たった一つだけが強い復讐心を以って、ナイトメアの居城となっていたオストラインスブルグまでたどり着いたのだった。

だが人の視点から見れば悪と言えど、アスタロスは紛れも無く神の従者であった。

即座に神罰がくだり、地面に亀裂が入る。男は仇討ちの喜びを声にする間もなく、重傷を追ったまま地下へと飲み込まれて消えた…。

アスタロスを破壊した男の仲間達の手により邪剣が砕かれたのは、その直後のことだった。

彼らは仲間の姿を求めてしばらくの間留まっていたが、やがて立ち去り、しばしの静寂が訪れた。

…四年の年月をかけてそれは行われた。

もしもアスタロスが純粋に人の手による存在であったなら、そのような事は起きなかったはずであった。

戦争神の加護、そして死の司ケール。これらの人知を越えた存在と、オストラインスブルグという土地がそれを可能にした。すなわち、かつてナイトメアの虐殺による流血と怨念を吸った周囲の土を媒介にしてアスタロスは再構築されたのだ。

一度破壊されたことにより、生来の弱かった「人の手による」部分が減り、さらには再生時に近くに存在したソウルエッジの破片をいくつか取り込んだ新しい体は、以前にも増して強靱に、そして冷たくそびえ立っていた。

やがて彼は自分のすべきことを思い出したのだろう。傍らに落ちていた懐かしき大斧を拾い上げると、霧の中へ消えていった。

5.0.1.02 Cassandra Alexandra

年齢： 21歳

出身： オスマントルコ帝国 / アテネ

身長： 164cm

体重： 最近計ってないと言い張る

生年月日： 7月20日

血液型： B型

使用武器： ショートソード&スモールシールド

武器名： オメガソード&ネメアシールド

流派： 身体を動かすまに（聖アテナ流）

家族構成： 父・アタロス

母・ニケ

弟・ルクス

姉・ソフィーティアは鍛冶屋ロティオンと結婚してピュラとパトロクロスの姉弟（年子）を産んだ

フラリといなくなった姉が傷だらけの状態で、東洋人の女に連れられて帰ってきたのはもう7年も前のことだ。古きオリンポスの鍛冶神へパイストスの神託を受け、邪剣ソウルエッジを破壊するための旅だったのだと姉は言った。その話はあまりにも突飛すぎて誰も信じなかったが、カサンドラは違った。彼女は姉が嘘をつくような人間ではないことを知っていたし、邪剣の一振りを砕いた時に負ったという傷の治療の際に、姉の身体から抜き採られた「邪剣の欠片」を見たのだ。だから数年後、結婚を目前にした姉が再び失踪した時、カサンドラはその理由がソウルエッジに違いないと考えた。

家族の心配に答えるかのように、しばらくして姉は帰ってきた。邪剣に汚染された土地を清めてまわってきたと語るその顔には、何かをやり遂げた者特有の穏やかさがあつた。その後婚礼を上げた姉は鍛冶屋を営む夫との間に2人の子をもうけ、今では幸せな家庭を築いている。

今日もカサンドラはアテネの街で小さなパン屋を営む実家の手伝いをしていたが、ちょっとした用事で少し隣町にある姉の家へやってきていた。まだ幼い子供達の寝顔を見ながらカサンドラは冗談混じりに言った。

「ピュラ、そしてパトロクロスもよく聞きなさい。君たちがしっかり捕まえてないとお母さん、また神様のお使いに行っちゃうぞ。」

その言葉を聞いた姉は微笑んで幼い姉弟の頭をなでながら、自分にはもう神様の声は聞こえないからと答えた。

やがて仕事が一段落したのか、義兄が部屋に入ってきた。今まで眠っていた子供達は急に跳ね起きて、我先にと父親のほうへ走る。これは見たことがない素材だと語る義兄の手から金属片をもぎ取り、必死で奪い合う子供達…。その様子はまるで自ら体の一部を取り合っているような、常軌を逸したものだつた。

カサンドラはその金属片に見覚えがあつた。そう。ソウルエッジの欠片…!

子供達の態度が示す事実には姉は声なき悲鳴を上げてくず折れる。その悲鳴にはつとしたカサンドラは、咄嗟に子供達の手から金属片を奪うと叫んだ。

「これが何だつていうのよ姉さん！ こんなものに何が出来るとでもいうの？
しっかりしてよ！ それでも神の声が聞こえるって強情張つて旅に出た聖戦士様なの?!」

彼女の中に怒りの感情が沸き上がる。突然の事態にあわてる義兄を残してカサンドラは姉の家を飛び出し、そのままへパイストスの神殿へと走つた。

「なんで姉さんをまきこんだのよ!? 神様のくせに！ 答えなさいよ！」

今や訪れる人もいない神殿に彼女の怒声が響き渡る。叫び疲れて座り込んだ彼女の目に、結婚式のあと姉が夫とともに奉納した鍛冶神の加護が宿るといふ武具が映つた。それは4年もの間、風雨にさらされながらも未だ輝きを失つてはいなかつた。

カサンドラはその武具と、手にしたソウルエッジの欠片を見比べる。まるで武具を恐れるように、忌むべき破片は鳴くような音をかすかにたてた…。

…まだ終わっていないんだわ。でも、姉さんはもう旅になんか行かせない。

私が邪剣を倒そう。へパイストスなんて信用できないけれど、今、目の前にはその為の力がある…!

東の空から光が差し込む頃、いつものように静寂に包まれた神殿にカサンドラの姿は無かつた。ただ、かつて奉納された武具が一組、消えていた。

5.0.1.03 Ivy (Isabella Valentine)

年齢 : 32歳
出身 : イングランド王国 / ロンドン
身長 : 179cm
体重 : 58kg
生年月日 : 12月10日
血液型 : 不明
使用武器 : 蛇腹剣 (ジャバラケン)
武器名 : バレンタイン (アイヴィーブレード)

流派： アンリレイトリック

家族構成： 育ての両親とは死別

実の父親はセルバンテスであることが判明

母親は既に死亡している

「不老不死の鍵」と言われるソウルエッジを求めるあまり、錬金術師でもあったバレンタイン伯爵は狂気の中で他界した。彼がソウルエッジのために続けた出費はあまりにも多大だったため、ロンドンの名門バレンタイン家は一代にして没落してしまったのである。

夫人もまた伯爵の後を追うように病に倒れ、バレンタイン家には一人娘であるアイヴィーだけが残った…。

実は彼女はバレンタイン家の実子ではなかった。まだ赤子の頃に屋敷の前に捨てられていたのを在りし日の伯爵夫妻が引き取られて、養子として育てられたのだ。伯爵夫人の遺言で初めてそのことを知ったアイヴィーであったが、それでも彼女にとっての両親は伯爵夫妻しかいなかった。

育ての父の遺志を継ぎ、ソウルエッジを求めて錬金術を学んだアイヴィーはその研究過程においてソウルエッジの正体が「魂を喰らう邪剣」である事実にとどろく。邪剣の噂に惑わされて死んだ父親の無念を晴らすべく、ソウルエッジの破壊を誓った彼女はもてる知識の全てを使った。

遂に妖しげな儀式をもって何者かを呼び寄せ、鞭へと変化する機械仕掛けの剣アイヴィーブレードに命を吹き込むことに成功する。

自ら意思を持ち、主であるアイヴィーを護り、また彼女の敵を討ち果たすであろうその剣を手にも、アイヴィーは邪剣探索の旅へと旅立ったのであった。

そしてアイヴィーブレードに命を吹き込んだ張本人-ナイトメアと出会った彼女はその恩を返すため、彼が行おうとしている「反魂術」の手助けをすることになる。

…全ては邪剣の計画とも知らずに。

だがナイトメアが倒れ、ソウルエッジが砕かれたあの日。遂に彼女は、ナイトメアこそがソウルエッジの持ち主であったことを知る。それはソウルエッジを破壊するための愛剣が、他ならぬ邪剣の力で生命を持っていた事実を意味していた。そしてアイヴィーは、自身の出生の秘密をも知ることになる。

彼女の実の父親…それはかつてソウルエッジを握り、邪剣に操られた男だったのである…!

思わず逃げ出したくなるような事実に衝撃を受けたアイヴィーは故郷へ戻り、暗い実験室に閉じこもる…。今や憎悪と後悔の対象でしかないアイヴィーブレードを何度破壊しようとしたらうか。

だが、その度手が止まる。

私もこの剣と同じなのだ。…そう、私にも邪剣の血が流れているのだ。同じ血が…。

アイヴィーブレードはただ静かに、主の命令を待っていた。

数ヶ月にもわたる長考の末、暗い部屋から出てきた彼女は、「邪剣破壊」にかわる「邪剣の完全なる根絶」という新たな目的を得ていた。彼女は目的を達成するという誓いの証として、忌むべき愛剣アイヴィーブレードに「バレンタイン」の名を冠すと、すぐさま旅支度を整えたのである。

数多に存在するであろうソウルエッジの欠片全て、邪剣の血筋を持つ者、そして邪気に犯されたと思われる人物全員を抹殺する。全ての禍根の芽を摘む為には、該当者の善悪すら問うてはならない。僅かな可能性も見逃さず、いかなる例外をも認めない。

鬼とでも悪魔とでも呼ぶがいい…! 邪剣の芽を残さず刈り取るためならば、喜んでその名に甘んじよう。

自らの分身とアイヴィー自身さえ消し去らねばならない、長く厳しい誓いの道。

育ての親の姓「バレンタイン」の名は、邪剣の血筋を濃く引きながらも強い意志をもって「人間」として

生きようとする彼女の象徴であった。

5.0.1.04 Kilik

年齢： 23歳
出身： 不明（明 / 真行山臨勝寺で育つ）
身長： 167cm
体重： 63kg
生年月日： 2月9日
血液型： A型
使用武器： 棍
武器名： 滅法棍（メッポウコン）
流派： 真行山臨勝寺棍法奥伝
家族構成： 臨勝寺で育てられるが姉同然だったシャンレンを含めてキリク自らが全員を殺害
師匠・エッジマスター

武術の修行が盛んなことで知られる真行山臨勝寺。ある夜を境にこの寺は歴史から消え去った…。邪気に犯され、正気を失った寺人達が互いに殺しあう中、たった一人生き延びた男。衰弱しきっていた彼は、翌朝一人の老人によって助けられた。

キリクは赤子の頃真行山に捨てられ、臨勝寺に引き取られた孤児であった。物心つく前から武術の修行を日常として育った彼は、特に棍を好んだ。そして16歳になるころには、棍術の奥義伝承者に選ばれる程までの使い手に成長したのである。

臨勝寺には三宝と呼ばれる代々伝わる三つの品があった。棍法の伝承者になるということは、その一つである滅法棍を授かる資格を得ることを意味していた。だが、イヴィルスバームが臨勝寺に降り注いだのは、その皆伝式の前夜のことであった…！

やがて老人の庵で目覚めたキリクの肩には、滅法棍と共に三宝の一つである末法鏡がかかっていた。末法鏡は、キリクと同じく孤児で彼にとっては姉のような存在であったシャンレンが授かっていたはずの品であった。

イヴィルスバームを浴びて膨れ上がった破壊衝動に流されていたキリクが正気に戻った時、既に彼は末法鏡を身に付けていた。おそらくこの鏡が、邪気を自分から取り除いたのに違いない…。

そして末法鏡を彼にかけたのは、持ち主であるシャンレンしか考えられなかった。

…なのに。なのにキリクは、そのシャンレンを殺してしまったのだ。末法鏡を持っていれば無事だったであろうシャンレン。だが彼女はキリクに鏡を託し、自らは狂気に飲まれて命を落とした。

彼女は何故死を選んでまで自分を生かしたのか。そして愛すべき人々を手にかけてしまった自分は、何のために生きていかなければならないのか…。

自らを責めつづけた彼はやがて、己の業を断ち切るこそが生き延びた自分に出来るただ一つのことだと結論する…。

「全ての元凶は邪剣ソウルエッジ。そしてキリク自身と、力を吸収する性質を持っていた滅法棍はあの夜以来邪気に満たされ、末法鏡によってかろうじて正邪のバランスを保っている。」

キリクが自分で結論を出すのを待っていたかのように、そう彼に継げる老人。この老人こそは、人里を避け隠れて暮らす臨勝寺の武術顧問その人であった。

彼は老人のもとで臨勝寺棍法の奥義と自らの身体と滅法棍に巣くう邪気をコントロールする術を学び、やがて邪剣破壊の旅へ出る。旅先でシャンファ、マキシと出会ったキリクは、旅の末にソウルエッジを持つナイトメアの居城へとたどり着いたが、ナイトメアの配下達に囲まれてしまう。盟友マキシの捨て身の行動によって、際限なく襲いくる敵を振り切ったキリクとシャンファはナイトメアに戦いを挑み、死闘の末シャンファが持つ霊剣ソウルキャリバーの力で邪剣を破壊することに成功した！

末法鏡は激しい戦いの最中、砕けてしまっていた。だが末法鏡がない状態でも、キリクは己の邪気が暴走しないことに気付く。

長い旅の末、彼は自分自身で内なる邪気を抑える術を会得していたのだった…。

...それももう既に4年も前のことだ。

その後、行方知れずとなったマキシの搜索を諦めた二人はそれぞれの道を歩き出した。師の元へ戻り邪気を時間をかけつつも中和・浄化する術を学び更なる高みを目指して修行を続けていたキリク。

だが彼はある日、覚えのある邪気を感知する。それは忘れようもない、忌まわしき邪剣のそれであった。

...未だソウルエッジは存在している！

破壊しただけでは邪剣を滅することができなかった...。力で邪剣を破壊することがかなわぬならば、滅法根に吸収させてしまえないだろうか。善悪を問わず力を吸収する滅法棍の特性を以ってすれば、全ての邪気を自分の監視下におくことができるはずだ。後は時間をかけて邪気を浄化していけば...

4年たった今でも自らに巣くう邪気を完全に浄化できてはいない事実から、邪剣が持つ巨大な邪気を完全に浄化するには、長い時間を必要とするのは容易に想像できた。

だが生涯かろうとも自らが手に掛けてしまった人達に償いができるなら...

答えは決まっていた。

5.0.1.05 Maxi

年齢： 28歳

出身： 首里 / 琉球王国 (沖縄)

身長： 174cm

体重： 64kg

生年月日： 5月1日

血液型： O型

使用武器： ヌンチャク

武器名： 蘇竜集 (そりゅーじゅ)

流派： 七閃架裏破手

気心知れた部下達を率い、雲のように気ままな旅を続ける琉球の海賊マキシ。既にアジアの海をあらかた巡り終えた彼は、新天地を求めて西へ向かっていた。ヨーロッパを目指して南航路を進み、インドの港街にたどり着いた時、彼はソウルエッジを探して旅をしていたキリクと出会う。

だが、それは決して喜ばしい出会いではなかった。

キリクが内に秘めていた邪気。それに導かれて現れた異形の群れとの戦いで、マキシの部下達はなす術もなくその命を失う。やがて異形の群れが去った時、かろうじて生きていたのはキリクとマキシだけだった。

仲間達の復讐を誓ったマキシは、この事件以降キリクとともに行動する。異形の群れを率いていたアスタロスは、いつか再びキリクのもとに現れるに違いなかった。

旅の途中でシャンファを仲間に加え、彼らは一路ヨーロッパを目指した。慣れない陸の旅を通じ、彼と新たな仲間達の絆は深まっていった。

やがて彼らは邪剣ソウルエッジを持つナイトメアの居城へと侵入、ナイトメアの配下達の襲撃を受ける。忘れもしない異形の群れ...!

目指す敵が近くにいと確信した彼に答えるかの如く現れる巨大な影。

仲間達を先に行かせ、マキシはアスタロスと対峙する。部下達の恨みを晴らすべく、彼は渾身の力を込めてアスタロスに挑み、ついに深手を負いながらも勝利を収めたのだ。しかしその直後、アスタロスを加護していたアレス神の手で地中へと飲み込まれたマキシは、意識を失ったまま地下深くを流れる水脈へと落ち、静かに冷水の中を流されていった。地上にはただ、彼のヌンチャクが残されていた。

気が付いたとき、マキシは岸边に打ち上げられていた。戦いで傷ついた手足の感覚は無く、ただ意識だけがしっかりとしていた。彼は最早自分が満足に動けないほどの重症を追ったのを理解した。

やがて近くの村の者に助けられたマキシは、その村で暮らし始める。持ち前の知識と義理堅い性格、そして

人をひきつける魅力は、彼を村の一員としてくれた。やがて体力は戻ってきたが、傷ついた四肢が治る見込みはなく、以前のように旅をする生活には戻れそうになかった。

だが、彼は満足していた。皆の仇は討てたのだから。キリク達がその後どうなったのか、それは気になっていたが今の平和な生活が続く以上、彼らはどうも災いの元を断ったのだと思われた。

このままこの村で一生を終えるのも悪くはない…。そう思っていた。

四年が過ぎたころ、ある噂が村へと届いた。

「大きな斧を持った 大きな男が通る 後には何も残らない」

マキシは直感した。奴だ…！ 詳しく話を聞けば聞くほど、直感は確信へと変わった。

奴が生きている…。俺はこんなところで何をしているんだ？ 仲間の仇も討たずに自分だけがのうのうと平和に暮らしていいわけがない！

だが、彼の四肢は動かなかった…。

マキシの心情を読み取ったのか、村に住むまじない師の老人が彼の前に現れる。

「何かを得ようとするならば、同等の何かを手放さなければなるまいよ。」

マキシは老人の秘術にすぎり、老人は取引に応じた。老人が最近手に入れたという珍しい金属片。

その貴重な品を薬として使って秘術は行われたのである。

数日の後、村人達に再会を約束するとマキシは旅立った。

彼が仇討ちのための肉体と引き換えに失ったもの…。それは仇討ちを誓った仲間と同じぐらいに大切な、旅の苦楽を共にした二人の記憶だった。

5.0.1.06 Heishiro Mitsurugi

年齢： 29歳

出身： 日本 / 備前

身長： 171cm

体重： 65kg

生年月日： 6月8日

血液型： AB型

使用武器： 日本刀

武器名： 獅子王 (シシオウ)

流派： 天賦古碎流・改

家族構成： 両親兄弟いずれも病死

戦乱の最中にあった日本に生まれ、農民の出身でありながら「戦国の用心棒」「孤狼剣士」「鬼神」などの二つ名で呼ばれる程にまでなった男、御剣平四郎。彼は傭兵として数多の戦場を渡り歩き、常に勝ち残ってきた。戦場で出会う敵全てが、彼の豪快な剣技を恐れてきたのだ。

だが、向かうところ敵無しに彼を脅かす新兵器が登場する。…種子島。織田信長によってその実用性が証明されつつあった、いわゆる鉄砲である。

己の腕だけで生きてきた彼にとって、種子島は大きな脅威であった。この「筒」を持つだけで、ただの雑兵が恐るべき戦力となる…。御剣がそのような状況を認められるはずもなく、彼は彼なりに種子島を打ち破る方法を模索した。しかし有効な手立ては見つからないまま時は流れ、ついに彼は焦りから種子島との勝負に挑んだ。

…結果右肩を撃ち抜かれて敗北した彼は、以前にも増して「打倒種子島」を胸に腕を磨きつつ、鉄砲に勝る強力な武器を求める日々を送る。海を越えてソウルエッジの噂が届いたのは、そんな時のことだった。

当時ナイトメアが持っていた異形の大剣。その凄まじさを遠い日本で伝え聞いた御剣は、何の躊躇もなく海を渡る！

噂の剣を奪うべく世界へ出た御剣。ナイトメアがいると言うヨーロッパを目指して一路西へ向かう。

しかし、ろくに言葉も通じぬ異国の旅は困難を極めた。しかし旅路において、路銀を得るため各地の戦に備

兵として参加した結果、御剣の剣の腕は鈍ることは無かったのである。

だが時は無情であった。もたもたしていた御剣の元へやがて、ナイトメアが消えてしまったという噂が届き、それを最後にソウルエッジの消息はぷつぷつと途絶えてしまった。それでも御剣は諦めきれず、ソウルエッジの手がかりを求めながら、世界の戦場を巡る生活を続けた。

4年後、とある明の辺境に位置する城に立ち寄っていた御剣は、ふとした事から、遂にソウルエッジの手がかりをつかむ。それはソウルエッジの欠片と呼ばれる金属片で、ある男から譲り受けたものであった。その男は街の裏路地で数人の刺客に囲まれて瀕死の重傷を負っていた。偶然その現場を目撃してしまった御剣は、目撃者を消すべく襲い掛かってきた刺客を相手に大立ち回りを演じてこれを撃退、結果男の命を救ったのであった。

瀕死の男は最早この傷では目的を果たせないと悟ったのか、御剣に金属片を託したのだ。こいつを手放さないでくれ、と。どうやら何者かの手に渡るのを恐れているようであったが、男はそれ以上は言わずに裏町の暗がりへと消えた。

だが...「そうるえっじ」ってな、砕けちまうような脆いモンなのか？

金属片をいじくりながら、御剣は自問自答していた。いまいち信憑性に欠ける気がするのである。しかし、あの男の目に偽りはなかった。そもそも死に瀕した人間が、見ず知らずの自分に嘘について何の得になる？

折りしも明皇帝の遣いが御剣のいた城塞を訪れ、英雄の剣を差し出すよう執拗に迫った末、ついには「無いものは出せない」と城主に切り捨てられたという容易ならざる話が城内を駆け巡った。

「戦か...」

御剣はこれまでに幾多の戦場で感じてきたものと同じ空気があたりを包んでいくのを感じていた。

5.0.1.07 Nightmare

年齢： 不明
出身： 不明
身長： 168cm
体重： 95kg
生年月日： 不明
血液型： 不明
使用武器： ソウルエッジ（ツヴァイハンダー型）
武器名： ソウルエッジ（♂）
流派： 我流、ソウルエッジの記憶
家族構成

かつてソウルエッジを握り、邪剣が囁くままに夜な夜な虐殺を行ってきた男。彼の赤い視線と、異様な一つ目の大剣を人々は彼を恐れた。ナイトメア...悪夢と。

もともと神聖ローマ帝国の辺境に位置する黒い森を根城とする盗賊団「黒い風」の首領だった彼は、長らく遠征に出かけていた騎士であった父親が何者かに殺されたのを期に略奪の生活をやめて仇討ちの旅に出る。

いつしか聞いた最強の剣ソウルエッジ...。それを手に入れば、父の仇を倒すことができると考え各地の戦場を巡りながら旅を続けた彼は、やがてスペインの廃港で異様な気を放つ剣とその持ち主だったのであろう海賊らしき死体を発見する。剣を護るかのように炎に包まれて起き上がった死体を倒した彼は、剣の柄に手を伸ばす....。

そうして、彼は聞いたのだ。その剣...ソウルエッジの声を。

魂を喰らう剣、ソウルエッジ。その集めた魂を使えば、父親を生き返らせることも不可能ではないと。新たな目的を得た彼の体から邪剣の気があふれ出す。それは美しい光の束となって夜空に舞い上り、世界中へ散っていった...

彼はこの瞬間、後にヨーロッパ中を恐怖で染める狂騎士、ナイトメアとなったのだ。

今ソウルエッジが持つ力だけでは父親の復活には足りない。そう考えた彼は邪剣に力を注ぐため、次々と集落をその凶刃にかけていった。それだけではならず、強い魂の持ち主を探してはその魂を邪剣に喰らわせ続けた。しかし三年程経ったある日、その凶行は終わりをつけた。

今まで通り犠牲者は邪剣の糧となるはずだったが、その日は違ったのだ。逆に彼のほうが、追い詰められてしまったのである。その理由は相手の一人が手にしていた剣にあった。

霊駿ソウルキャリバー。そのソウルエッジとは対極の気を放つ剣の使い手達との戦は、邪剣を中心に染み出した炎と邪気が渦巻く空間へと舞台を変えていく。そして激しい死闘の末ついに邪剣は砕かれ、彼はその衝撃で砕けた邪剣と共にゆがんだ空間へと落ちていった...

ソウルエッジの邪気が急激に弱まったのだろう。彼は辛うじて人間性を取り戻していく。

己が重ねてきた罪と自分に向けられた恐れと怒りの記憶、そして記憶の底から浮かんでくる鮮明な記憶。父親の命を奪ったのは他でもない、彼自身だったのだ...!

いずことも知れない土地へ投げ出された彼は自らの記憶に押し潰されそうになりながら、砕けて弱まったあまり絶えず破片が剥がれゆく邪剣を握り締めて夜へと消えていった...

邪剣を再び人の手に渡してはいけないという一念で、彼は人里を離れて道なき道を行く。

だが、彼は決まって死体の傍らで目覚めた。彼が眠る僅かな時間の間、彼の身体は邪剣に乗っ取られるのである。目覚めるごとさらに罪の意識を重ね、苦悩しながらも彼は最も安易な逃げ方...死を選ぶことだけは避けた。

もしそうすれば、野放しにされた邪剣は間違いなく次の宿主を見つけてしまうからである。強い意志をもって彼は、邪剣を封じるべき場所を探してさまよい続けた。

彼と邪剣のバランスの変化は徐々に現れてきた。始めは僅かであった肉体を支配する意識の交代が不規則になり、邪剣のほうが、徐々に長い時間を支配するようになった。

邪剣が支配する時間に行われる殺人。それを積み重ねた結果、大小の亀裂が無数に入っていたはずの邪剣が少しずつ癒えていたのだ...

そして、四年もする頃には、それ相応の邪気さえ放つまでに回復していたのである!

逃亡の過程で失った数多の破片、かつて「イヴィルスパーム」として飛び散ってしまった邪気、そして砕かれてしまったもう一本のソウルエッジ...

今や大半の時間を邪剣が支配する肉体は、再び「ナイトメア」として失われた自身を求め、ついに本格的に復活に向けて動き出した!

...その一方で「彼」の意識もまた、与えられた僅かな時間の中で足掻き続けていた。

5.0.1.08 Raphael Sorel

年齢 : 32歳
出身 : フランス王国 / ルーアン
身長 : 178cm
体重 : 72kg
生年月日 : 11月27日
血液型 : A型
使用武器 : ソードレイピア
武器名 : フランベツト
流派 : ソレル・ラピエレ
家族構成 : 養女・エイミ

くだらない一族とは縁を切ったも同然

宗教抗争の真っ只中にあった16世紀のフランス。そんな時代を揺籠に、貴族達の謀略を子守唄に、そしてレイピアと医学を友として育った冷徹で非情なソレル家の若き当主。それがラファエルである。彼の処世術は敵を多く作ったが、その的確で素早い判断力と実行力は、確実にソレル家の基盤を堅固なものにしていた。

だが悪名高いイヴィルスパームが起きた年、彼は致命的な間違いを犯した。ソレル家が支持していた貴族の一人がイヴィルスパームを浴びて狂乱状態に陥ったことを知るのが遅れ、敵意を持つものに自分を攻撃する大義名分を与えてしまったのだ。しかも戦乱に巻き込まれた凡庸な一族達は早々に保身を図り、ラファエルの身柄を引き渡すことを条件に降伏してしまったのである。

ただ一人孤立し、一族からも追われながら彼は貧民街へと逃れた。だが不自由な生活に慣れた彼にとって、飢えと寒さで凍える生活は厳しかった。追手に発見され、弱った体で逃げている所を匿ってくれたエイミという名の幼い少女がいなかったなら、彼は生きていなかったにちがいない…。彼女にとってそれは「兵隊が嫌いだから、邪魔をした」というだけの、ほんの気まぐれな行動にすぎなかった。しかしそれは、自分の力だけで生き抜いてきたラファエルにとって、生まれて初めて他人に助けられた瞬間だったのだ。彼に欠落していた何かの感情が沸き起こり、ラファエルにとってエイミは特別な存在となった。

これまで持っていた価値観から一步離れて見た世界はまったくもって新鮮で、そして無意味なものだった。貴族たちは自らの利益と保身のみを考え、争いを繰り返すばかり。平民は平民で、戦乱に疲れ果て全てを諦めきっていた。無気力で生きていても死んでいても変わらないような者ばかりだった。

戦乱のもとでは、真の意味で生きている意味を持つ人間はいないと確信した彼は、エイミを連れて貧民街を出た。彼らはくだらない戦乱を避けて地方都市へと移ったが、環境が変わってもエイミは周囲に心を開かなかった。長い貧民街の生活は雑草の如き生命力と強い警戒心を育てていたが、同時にまだ10歳にも満たない彼女から未来という希望を消し去ってしまったのだ。

彼はソレルの名を隠してある資産家に近づき、少女を養う為の財産を得た。持ち前の聡明さで犠牲者と周囲の信頼を得、折をみて毒を盛ったのである。あとは「屋敷の主人は長い旅に出かけた」と偽りの情報を流すだけだった。やがて彼は屋敷の図書室で、己の転機ともなったイヴィルスパームに関する書簡を発見する。その全貌に興味を持った彼が、ソウルエッジにたどり着くのに時間はかからなかった。

狂気と引き換えに持主に力を約束する魔剣、ソウルエッジ。それを愚かな貴族どもの中に投げ込んだなら…。間違いなく彼らはソウルエッジを奪い合うだろう。一時的に戦乱は大きくなり、そして最終的には自ら破滅の道を歩いていくに違いない。当然ソウルエッジをめぐる戦乱によって平民にも被害は出るだろうが、彼らはもともと死んでいるも同然なのだからどうだろうとかまわない。

それを己の欲で戦乱を起こす貴族どもを一掃し、エイミが自ら意味ある人生を歩んでいける世界を用意することができるなら…。その為には、ソウルエッジの入手が不可欠であった。必要ならば、何としてでも手に入れて見せよう。たった一人のための壮大な、そして狂気を含んだ計画がラファエルの中で織りあがっていく…!

5.0.1.09 Taki

年齢： 29歳
出身： 日本 / 封魔の里
身長： 170cm
体重： 53kg
生年月日： 不明
血液型： A型
使用武器： 忍者刀×2
武器名： 裂鬼丸（レッキマル） & 滅鬼丸（メッキマル）
流派： 夢想抜刀流
家族構成： 両親兄弟は病死
恩師・トキ

かつて愛刀・裂鬼丸と共鳴する邪剣ソウルエッジに興味を持ち、世界を旅したタキ。彼女は魔物退治を生業とする封魔の忍の一員である。封魔の腕に長けるばかりではなく自らの武具をも打つ彼女は、封魔の忍でも屈指の使い手だった。当時ソウルエッジを握り、邪剣に精神をのっとられた大海賊セルバンテスと対峙し、これを打ち破ったのも、ひとえに彼女の実力によるものだった。

長い旅を終えた彼女は、入手した邪剣の破片を妖刀滅鬼丸に打ち込もうと試みる。だがその結果、滅鬼丸はさらに強い邪気を発しはじめ、最早タキにも扱いかねる程の妖刀と化してしまったのだ。恩師でもある封魔の首領トキが既に妖刀に魅入られている事実を見抜いたタキは、滅鬼丸をトキに渡すのは危険と判断した。こうして彼女は抜け忍となったのである。

かつての仲間達から追われる身となったタキは、強力な邪気を持つソウルエッジと滅鬼丸をぶつけて相殺するべく再びソウルエッジを追いかけた。しかし彼女がソウルエッジにたどり着く直前に、邪剣の持ち主であったナイトメアは一組の男女の前に敗れ去っていた。

滅鬼丸を手にも再び思案するタキ。ソウルエッジ亡き今、いかにこの妖刀を破壊するべきか…。以前から密かに持っていた、滅鬼丸を使いこなしてみたいという思いが強くなっていく…。

旅の間に多少なりとも滅鬼丸を扱う糸口をつかんでいた彼女は、滅鬼丸を完全に制御するべく精神を鍛える生活に入る。そして極めて短時間ならば滅鬼丸を使役することが可能になったある日、タキのもとに封魔の忍が現れた。彼らはそれまでの追手とは違い、問答無用で襲ってくるわけではなかった。なにやら策を張り、彼女を生け捕ろうとしているようである。しかしタキがそのような罠にかかるわけもなく、彼らは滅鬼丸の前に倒れた。

「首領の命とはいえ、わざわざ異国までご苦労なことだ…。ん…？」

追手の骸を調べていた彼女の手にも、一つの金属片が当たる。弱々しいながらも、その金属片が発する邪気はソウルエッジのものに相違なかった。邪剣は完全に消滅したわけではなく、このような欠片に砕け、バラバラになって存在していたのだ。

彼女は瞬時にして今回の追手が彼女の殺害ではなく、あくまで生け捕りをねらっていた理由に思い当たった。トキがソウルエッジの情報を収集しているのだ。おそらくこの欠片のように、いくつもの欠片が里へと運ばれているに違いない。

ソウルエッジを握った人間がどうなるかを彼女は知っていた。もしもトキがソウルエッジを手にしたなら…！

ただでさえ封魔の長として強力な力を持つトキである。ソウルエッジが彼に与える狂気は、トキをこれまでになく強い強力な妖怪と変貌させる恐れがあった。

近い将来故郷で起こるであろう災いを見逃せるはずもなく、彼女は日本へと向かう。再び膨れ上がった邪剣の気配を彼女が察知したのは、その帰国の路の途中であった。手にした欠片の邪気がわずかに活性化したのが判る。彼女は咄嗟に欠片を封じると、少しだけ考えた。

かつての恩師の手にあるであろう欠片を封じるのが先か、それとも復活したと思われる邪剣本体を封じる

のが先か...!

いずれにせよ、時間は限られていた。

5.0.1.10 Talim

年齢 : 15歳
出身 : 東南アジア／風奉りの集落
身長 : 144cm
体重 : 42kg
生年月日 : 6月15日
血液型 : 不明
使用武器 : 叉刃拐 (サジンカイ) ×2
武器名 : ロカ・ルーハ&シィ・サリカ
流派 : 風奉りの奉納剣舞
家族構成 : 父・サンプット
母・リディ
祖母 (集落の最長老) ・カラナ
鳥・アルン

スペインがフィリピンに対して領土宣言を行った瞬間、東南アジアは激動の時代を迎えた。

西洋人が持ち込んだ新しい文化は、遠慮無く元からあった文化を侵食していった。彼らは今でこそ沿岸部から先へは進んでこなかったが、やがて山間部へ踏み入ってくるのも時間の問題だった。

その足音を感じつつ、迫る西洋列強から隠れるようにひっそりと山間部で暮らす集落がある。

彼らは先祖代々風を奉り、自然と共に生きてきた人々だった。彼らの考えからすれば、風は世界を巡る血液のようなものだ。

タリムはそんな時代、その集落の霊媒士の家系に生まれた。彼女は徐々に進む西洋化と共に風信仰と霊験が弱まっていくなか、「最後の巫女」として育てられる。そしてタリムは、その資質ゆえに生死の境を彷徨うことになる。

彼女はいつもと同じように風を読んでいた。幼い頃から毎日続けてきたことだったが、その日はいつもと様子が違った。いつも自然の囁きに混じって聞こえる遠く離れた町々のざわめきの代わりに、全てを飲み下すような邪気が運ぶ悲鳴と絶望と狂気の記憶。

いたるところで同時に起きているであろう惨劇が、本人が理解する間もなく一気にタリムの中へ流れ込んできたのだ...!

...それは遠い西方の地で、「イヴィルスパーム」が起きた日のことだった。

その場で倒れこんだタリムは、そのまま数日間意識を取り戻すことなく眠りつづけ、皆が諦めかけた頃になつてようやく目を開いた...。その瞳は深い悲しみで満たされていた。

わけもわからず、彼女は泣いた。

その後、彼女が15歳になる頃には集落で行商人や探検家など西洋人の姿を見る機会も多くなった。

ある日そんな西洋人の一人によって村に持ち込まれた「活力のお守り」。

その珍しい金属片を見た年寄り達は、口々に危険を唱えた。

風を読む彼らにとって、これらの気は本来の位置役割からずれているがために、周囲に良くない影響を及ぼす悪しきものであった。

タリムは瞬時に、その金属片からあの邪気と同じものを感じとった。

...この破片を本来の位置役割へ戻さなければならない!

破片を持って旅に出ようとする彼女を止めようとする年寄り達。彼らは「最後の巫女」が集落の外部と接触し、その純粋さが失われるのを恐れた。だが、彼女の両親は違う考え方を持っていた。

彼らは逆に、娘が様々な体験をすることで自然に対する純粋さを高める事を望んだのである。

集落が峰の向こう側へ消えたころ、タリムは自分が持つ金属片と同様の邪気を発している存在が世界中に点在しているのに気が付く。

大陸を越え、海を渡る風が邪気を運んでくるのだ。だが、このような気を風が運び続けていては、遠からず世界は病んでしまうだろう。

おそらく同じような破片が散らばっているのだ。そしてそれらは自分が出会った破片のように、今も人の手によって世界中に広がっている…。全ての破片を集めて、その「本来有るべき場所」を探し出す必要があった。

これまで集落の外を知らず、初めて広い世界に出た彼女だったが、風を肌で感じることはどこでも出来た。風が吹く限り、たとえ長い長い旅をすることになっても不安にならなかつた。

5.0.1.11 Voldo

年齢： 50歳
出身： ナポリ王国 / パレルモ
身長： 183cm
体重： 84kg
生年月日： 8月25日
血液型： A型
使用武器： カタール（ジャマダハル）×2
武器名： マナス&アユス
流派： 我流
家族構成： 両親は既に鬼籍に入っている
兄弟4人は戦災で死亡
主ベルチャーも他界して久しい

地中海に浮かぶ小島の一つに存在すると言われる富豪ベルチャーの宝…。一攫千金を狙う盗賊達が目指し、いつしかマネーピットと呼ばれたその縦穴状の倉には、常にある噂がつきまとっていた。

侵入者を待ち受ける罠の数々、そしてその深部には不気味な番人が潜んでいるというのだ…。

「私のもとに存在しないものは無い」という言葉で知られるイタリアの死の商人ベルチャー。だが、そんなベルチャーにも「欲して止まない品」は存在していた。秘宝中の秘宝ソウルエッジを手にとり、思いつく限りの手段を尽くしたベルチャーであったが、それでもソウルエッジを手にはできなかった。遂に彼は自ら船団を率いて捜索の旅へと出たが、その留守の間にイタリア戦争が勃発。ベルチャーは秘宝を見つけるどころか、残してきた財産を全て戦乱に奪われてしまったのである。己の全存在とも言える財産の大半を失ったベルチャーは、船団に残る最後の財産を守るため、部下と共に地中海の小島に縦穴を掘った。宝を狙う者を拒むため、その縦穴には幾重にも罠が張られた。こうして主の思惑通り、秘倉マネーピットは二十数年に渡って盗人達を飲み込みつづけたのだ…。

今日も男は宝を守っていた。彼こそが、番人と恐れられ侵入者達から宝を守るその男である。かつて富豪ベルチャーの航海を補佐し、共にマネーピットを掘り、そして主の死後、ひたすらにその遺産を守り続けるこの男は、長い穴倉生活を送るうちに視力と思考を失い、ヴォルドという自分の名前すら忘れて久しかった。しかし、彼にとってそれは些細なことだったに違いない。今は無き主の望みをかなえること…この財宝を守ることが彼の全てだったのだから。だが…何かを忘れていた。何か足りなかった。愚かにも宝を狙う侵入者の断末魔を聞きながら、ヴォルドは次第にそれを思い出していった。…秘宝ソウルエッジ。

亡き主の望みをかなえるべくヴォルドは外界の捜索を開始した。秘宝の手がかりを求めつつ定期的に秘倉へ戻って罠や宝の無事を確認する。彼は己の仕事は一切の雑念が入ることなく進めていった。

そしてある日、マネーピットに戻った際に侵入者を退けたヴォルドの耳に亡き主ベルチーの声が聞こえたのだ。声に従い、侵入者の女が持っていた剣が持つ「ソウルエッジの気配」を追ってヴォルドは旅を続け、遂に妖気を放つ一振りの刀を持ち帰ったのだ。

暗い縦穴の最深部には海水が溜まっていた。冷たい水越しに様々な財宝が沈んでいるのを見下ろす所は日頃のベルチーの像。その裏側にある小部屋の中で、今日も一人の男が本来は主の為に用意された玉座に腰掛けて微動だにしていないのが見える。

彼はソウルエッジを見つけたはずであった。足りなかった唯一の品は手に入れたはずであった。

しかし亡き主は、再び彼に声をかけてはくれなかったのだ…。

4年が流れた今もマネーピットの時間は止まったまま、時折訪れる侵入者を倒す彼の生活は変わらなかった。懐かしき声を彼はいつまでも待ちつづけ、いつまでもこの沈黙は続いていくかのように思えた。

だが、運命は突然に彼を現実へと引き戻す。ある日倒した侵入者の持ち物の中から、ヴォルドは主に捧げたソウルエッジから放たれるものと同様の妖気をもつ数個の金属片を見つけたのだ。しかもそれらは破片であるにもかかわらず、一つ一つが比類なき秘宝であるはずのソウルエッジと同等の力を感じさせる…。

敬愛してやまない亡き主が、未だその声をかけてくれない理由をヴォルドは今、理解できた。

彼が手に入れた品は、ソウルエッジではないのだ。これらの破片がソウルエッジが砕けてしまったものなのかどうかはヴォルドにはわからなかった。だがソウルエッジを追えば、それもおのずとわかってくるだろう。

ヴォルドは丁寧に欠片を集めて玉座の上に乗せると、外界へと消えたのである。

主が最期まで望み続けたソウルエッジを秘倉へ持ち帰るのが彼の使命であった。

5.0.1.12 Xianghua

年齢： 20歳

出身： 明帝国 / 北京

身長： 152cm

体重： 46kg

生年月日： 4月2日

血液型： B型

使用武器： 中華剣

武器名： 無名

流派： 真行山臨勝寺剣法 + アレンジ

家族構成： 母は病死

父は死んだと母から聞かされていた

度重なる倭寇の侵略に苦しめられていた東の大国・明は、民を守り、また国の威信を取り戻すため、英雄の剣と伝えられたソウルエッジの探索にもっとも力を入れた国の一つである。

しかし三度にもわたる搜索隊は、いずれも吉報を持ち帰ることはなかった。第一、第二の搜索隊はついに帰ることは無く、つい先ごろ帰国した第三陣も英雄の剣を見つけることはできなかったのだ。

皇帝の親衛隊から選りすぐった第三陣ですら入手することはかなわなかったという結果は、皇帝を大いに失望させたのである…。

シャンファはその第三陣に参加した一人であった。彼女は代々軍人の柴家に育ち、今は亡き母親から剣の手ほどきを受けていた。やがて母が病死した後もシャンファは腕を磨きつづけ、ついにはその腕を見込まれて皇帝の親衛隊員となる。…そしてソウルエッジ探索の任務に抜擢され、失敗したのである。

皇帝の不興を買った彼女はその後親衛隊の任を解かれ、張り合いの無いヒマな仕事を与えられていた。

柴家の者はその境遇を嘆いたが、彼女はそれで良いと思っていた。

実は四年前、彼女はソウルエッジを目の当たりにしたのだ。だが英雄の剣であるはずのソウルエッジの正体は、人の魂を際限なく喰らう邪剣だったのである。そのような剣を国に持ち帰ったところで災いしか呼ばないであろう。このような邪悪な存在は破壊してしまわなければならない！

そう判断したシャンファは旅を共にした仲間であるキリクとともにソウルエッジと戦い、炎渦巻く異空間で邪剣を破壊することに成功した。しかし、戦いの間不思議な力で彼女を守り、共に戦った母の形見である剣はシャンファ達が異空間から帰還する際に虚空へと失われてしまった。自らの運命を切り開きなさい。形見の剣は失われたが、その遺言はシャンファの精神に宿っていた。彼女は自分の決断が正しかったと確信していたのだ。

ある日、彼女を失望させる事件がおきる。皇帝が自国の辺境に位置するある城を攻撃したのだ。表向きの理由は反逆を計画していたからだと報じられていたが、ほどなくシャンファにはその真の理由が告げられた。

それは明の諜報部が見つけた確かな情報だった。かつてソウルエッジ探索第二陣として派遣された男が英雄の剣を持ちながら、かの城に留まって皇帝の元へは帰ろうとしないというのだ。召喚の使者を出しても彼は応じず、また城主も彼の引渡しに応じない。それはソウルエッジを皇帝に献上するのを拒み、己が物とする意図があるに相違ないと判断された。軍が送られた結果城は落城したが、剣を発見することは出来なかったのである。

再びシャンファを召し出した皇帝は、彼女を廃墟となった城へと派遣することにしたのだ。それは彼女がもっともソウルエッジに近づいたと思われる人間であり、瓦礫の山からソウルエッジを探し出すには彼女の経験と知識が必要だと考えたからに他ならなかった。

確かに自分は邪剣を破壊したのだ。だから、ソウルエッジが戦場となった城にあるはずはなかった。真実を報告していたならば、今回の戦いは起きなかったのかもしれない…。深い悲しみと共に戦場跡へと派遣されたシャンファ。だが彼女は、数少ない生き残りの証言や細かく散り散りになった記録などから確かにソウルエッジの欠片と呼ばれる品がこの地に存在していた事実にとどり着く。

もしも本当に邪剣の欠片だったならば、その邪気に気が付く人間はいたはずだ。そう考えれば欠片を入手した者が、皇帝への献上を躊躇した理由も説明がつく。推測される欠片の大きさからして、城主がそれを欲から手元においておきたいと考えるのは難しかった。すると、やはり欠片は忌まわしき邪剣のそれであったのか…？

破壊したはずのソウルエッジが、今なお災いを起こしているかもしれない…！

もしもそれが事実ならば、その欠片を見つけ出し、形も残らないほど徹底的に砕いてしまわなければならない！

それは邪剣を中途半端に破壊して安心してしまっていた自分が負うべき責任なのだ。

一度決心したシャンファの行動は素早かった。その夜のうちに彼女は一人任務を離れたのである…。

5.0.1.13 Hong Yunsung

年齢： 18歳
出身： 李氏朝鮮 / 智異山
身長： 176cm
体重： 72kg
生年月日： 4月16日
血液型： o型
使用武器： 中華刀
武器名： 白露（ビャクロ）
流派： 成家式大刀術 + 生来の足癖
家族構成： 父は病死
母は行方不明
恩師・成漢明

隣国日本がほぼ統一されて早や数年、李氏朝鮮は緊張に包まれていた。揺れ動く情勢の中において安定する

国が生まれる…。それはすなわち、その国の海外進出が近いことを意味しているのだ。

日本を隣国に持つ李氏朝鮮は、何時日本が攻めてきてもいいようにすぐさま防備を固めていた。

水軍提督・李舜臣（リ・シュンシン）が組織する沿岸警備隊もその一環である。

名将と名高い提督の下には有望な若者達が集い、その防衛力には大いに期待がかけられていた。

その沿岸警備隊にその人ありと言われた黄星京（ファン・ソンギョン）を世に送りだした成式道場に、一人の少年が入門したのはもう十年以上も前のことだ。その少年から見て、14年年上のファンは、まさに憧れの英雄だった。

やがて時は流れ、彼も多感で血気盛んな年頃に成長する。洪潤星（ホン・ユンスン）といえば、同世代はもとより年長の門下生達にも知られた名前となっていた。道場主・成漢明（ソン・ハンミョン）直々の指導を受けるまでに腕を上げていた彼にとって、幼いころの英雄だったファンは今や追い抜くべき目標と言えた。祖国の為、二度にわたる「救国の剣」探索に抜擢されるほどの実力者であるファンとの手合わせを望むユンスン…。いわゆる若気の至りというやつである。

年長の者は苦笑しながらもそんなユンスンの将来に期待していた。多分に荒々しく感情的ではあるが、彼はまっすぐな心を持つ男だった。

ファンが長旅から戻って来るという知らせが成式道場へ届いた日、ユンスンはとうとうその時が来たと思っただ。体調は万全、気分も最高だ。今ならファンに自分を認めさせることはおろか、ともすれば彼を超えたことが証明されるかもしれない！

…だが世界をめぐる、大局を見据えていたファンはユンスンの挑戦に応じることことはなかった。「救国の剣」が見つからなかった以上、隣国の侵略に備えて即刻隊に戻るのには当然のことだったのである。

しかし、ファンに全く相手にされていないと理解したユンスンは不満であった。しばらくはふてくされていた彼だったが、ある日彼の様子を見かねた師の娘・成美那（ソン・ミナ）から一振りの刀を渡される。

「何いつまでもふてくされてるの。これでも見てよく自分を見つめなおしなさい。…まったく子供なんだから。」

それは成家に代々伝わる一振りの刀で、その刀身をには持つ者の奥底が映ると伝えられる品だった。

その夜、ユンスンは一人、刀身に映る自分の姿を見ながら自分は何をすべきかを考えた。

様々な思い、考えが浮かんでは消える。

確かに祖国の危機において、私闘を優先させるのは愚かだ。ならば…？

…そうだ、あの人が遂に達成出来なかった「救国の剣」を探しだして、俺の存在を認めさせてやる。彼を追い抜くのは国を救ってからだ！

自分の力を示すとともに、祖国の危機をもすくう一石二鳥の考えは大変納得できた。

そうと決めたら、ゆっくりとしてはいられない。即刻彼は荷物をまとめると、師に手紙を残して道場の門をくぐる。四年前ファンが引き分けたと言う琉球の海賊が南航路でヨーロッパへ向かったらしいという噂を聞いていた彼は、迷わず南路を選んでヨーロッパへ向かう。

彼は後に、ソウルエッジが「救国の剣」どころか忌まわしきものであるらしいことに悩みながらも、確実に邪剣に近づいていくことになる。さらに隣国日本が遂に祖国に攻め込んだとの知らせも届く。

…悩んだ末にユンスンは決断するだろう。

ファンに自分を認めさせ、そして祖国を脅かす日本を倒せるなら…。

たとえソウルエッジが邪剣であろうとも構うものか！

身長： 170cm
体重： 不明
使用武器： 日本刀
武器名： 妖刀吉光
流派： 卍忍術

時の権力者に恐れられ、抹殺された忍の一族があった。たった一人生き残った男は一族の復讐を誓ったが、権力者を守る軍勢相手に一人では何もできず逆に追い詰められてしまう。腕一本を失いながらも九死に一生を得て逃げるのができたのは、一族随一と言われた彼の力と多大な幸運があつたことだった。それでも彼は一族の復讐をあきらめることはできず、そのころ日本に流れてきていた一つの噂に望みをかけて海を渡る。最強の剣ソウルエッジ。それをもってすれば、軍勢ごと敵を屠ってしまうはずであった。

大陸へと渡り、剣の噂を追いながら彼は歩を進めた。やがてヨーロッパへとたどり着いたとき、彼はちょうどその頃ヨーロッパを襲っていた虐殺事件の跡に遭遇する。抹殺された一族の記憶が目前の光景と重なり、彼は考えた。

理由はどうかと殺意が生み出すのは、深い悲しみと復讐心であろう。そして、その殺意を自分も抱いているのだ。自分が仇と同じことを成さんとしている事実を、一族の皆が望むであろうか...

馬鹿な、一体何を迷っているのだ！

己の中に芽生えた迷いを振り切り、再びソウルエッジを求めて旅を続ける彼。しかしその旅路で幾度も幾度も虐殺の爪跡に出会う度、彼の意に反して迷いは次第に大きくなっていく。いつしか彼はソウルエッジでは無く、虐殺を起こす男の足取りを追っていた。

虐殺を重ねる男...ナイトメアの足取りを追っていた彼は、やがてその居城オストラインスブルグへとたどり着いたが、人の気配はなく、城は静寂につつまれていた。所々に渦巻く邪気が残っていたものの、虐殺の男の手がかりはまったく無く、やがて彼は城を後にした。

それから間もなくして、彼は異変に気付く。彼の刀が禍々しき気を宿していたのだ。おそらくはあの地に残っていた怨念が、人を斬ったことがある刀に吸い寄せられたのだろう。

彼は妖刀と化した刀に己の名「吉光」を冠し、その負の気を静めることを決意する。これまで復讐の誓いを支えていた彼の精神力はその向きを変えた。そう、彼が抱いていた迷いは遂に悟りへと転じたのである。

だが、ここで思いもかけなかったことが起きた。

彼が怨念を沈めるために精神を使い果たし、不覚にも熟睡してしまったその晩、闇に紛れて忍び寄った何者かに彼の刀は盗まれてしまったのだ。

一日やそこらである怨念が静まるはずもない。あの刀を野放しにしては再び不幸を招くであろう。

その後吉光は刀を探し大陸を巡りながら、弱きものを守るために働く生活を送っていた。そして四年後、彼は権力者と弱者との貧富の差を少しでも打開するためある計画を立てる。死の商人と言われた大富豪ベルチーの墓、そこに蓄えられているという財宝を盗み出すのだ。

吉光はその技術、体術を駆使してマネーピットと呼ばれる墓へ侵入する。噂どおり内部は罠に満ち溢れていたが、最も警戒していた「番人」には結局出会わぬまま財宝へとたどり着くことに成功した。予想を越える収穫に思わず笑みがもらした彼であったが、やがてその笑みは消えた。

財宝の中に彼は発見したのだ...失われて久しい刀を。そして奥の一室に安置されている空の玉座を発見したとき、さらにその表情は深刻なものとなった。

...玉座の上には、愛刀が宿したのと同じ邪気を放つ金属片があつたのである。

数刻の後、己の名を持つ刀と金属片を手にした吉光はマネーピットを立ち去った。

このような邪気を帯びる品が多数残っているのならば、それらは全て摘み取ってしまわなくてはならないだろう。そう、あのような悲劇を二度と繰り返してはならない。

今や吉光の心に一片の曇りすらない。携える邪気を帯びた品々も、自らの進むべき道を進む彼の心に影を落とすことなど出来なかった。

5.0.1.15 Cervantes (Cervantes de Leon)

年齢 : 48で止まっている
出身 : バレンシア/スペイン王国 (スペイン)
身長 : 177cm
体重 : 80kg
使用武器 : 長剣&短銃剣
武器名 : ソウルエッジ (♀) &ニルヴァーナ
流派 : ソウルエッジの記憶

かつて大西洋を恐怖で包み込み、列強の艦隊ですら恐れたと言われる大海賊・セルバンテス。かの邪剣が力を失う以前の姿・雌雄二本のソウルエッジを手にした時、人間としての彼は死を迎えた。その身体が朽ち果てるまで邪剣の思うままに操られる…。それが彼の運命だった。事実部下を皆殺しにし、己が拠点としていた港町を血で染め、そしてソウルエッジの噂にひきつけられて訪れる剣士の魂を喰らいながら過ごした二十数年の歳月の間、彼の身体を支配していたのはソウルエッジであった。

当時邪剣はたまたま休息期間に入っていたため、自ら魂を求めて虐殺を起こすことはなかった。だがもちろんそれは一時的なもので、時がくれば殺戮の嵐はヨーロッパを襲っただろう。そしてその中心にはソウルエッジを携えたセルバンテスが立っていたはずであった。

しかしソウルエッジの休息期間が終わる前に、彼の運命は激しく揺れることになる。邪剣を恐れた神の啓示を受けた聖戦士との戦いによって片方のソウルエッジが破壊されてしまったのだ。かつて無いほど大きくバランスを崩したソウルエッジは更に現れた敵との連戦を強いられ、そして宿主であったセルバンテスを失ったのである。

暴走状態に陥ったソウルエッジの片割れだけがその場に残され、セルバンテスの身体は、邪剣から漏れ出した炎に焼かれて朽ちていった…。

…だが、それでもセルバンテスの魂は解放されなかった。

炭化して今や誰とも判別のつかない死体のもとを、ソウルエッジの新たな宿主が訪れたのはしばらくしてからの事だった。ソウルエッジが近づいたことにより、破壊された際に飛び散ってセルバンテスの身体に食い込んだ邪剣の破片が共鳴をはじめ。その反応を感じ、ソウルエッジがいかなる思いを巡らせたかは判らないが、新たなソウルエッジの犠牲者は立ち去った…。

一方活性化した破片はまるで生物のようにセルバンテスの死体の中を蠢きまわる。一昼夜が過ぎたころ、廃墟の中から彼は立ち上がった。こうして彼は、再びこの世に戻ってきたのである。

しかし、セルバンテスの身体に残っていた破片は僅かだった。復活を果たしたものの、彼の精神は完全ではなかったのだ。彼は記憶を失っていた。半ば廃船と化しながら港に停泊していた海賊時代からの旗艦、エイドリアン号の名だけがかりうじて覚えていた全てであった…。

彼は自分の名前も思い出せないまま廃墟の中で暮らしていたが、やがてその姿を消えた。

…そう、嵐の中で立ち尽くしていたある晩、彼は思い出したのだ。同じような嵐の中、エイドリアン号で狙った船を襲ったことを。哀れな犠牲者達から奪った獲物のことを。そして手にした二対の剣のことを…!

全てを思い出した時、彼はあの巨大な力を再び手にしたいと感じていることに気がついた。精神を乗っ取られ、操られた記憶を持っていてなお、その力は魅力的であったのだ。邪剣の破片を己が一部として蘇った男は共鳴を聞き取り、邪剣が今どの地に存在するのを知った。驚くべきことにその気配は数箇所に分かれていたが、一方の邪剣が砕け散ったことを考えれば、それは自然なことだと思われた。第一、彼自身の身体の中にも邪剣は存在しているのだから。

セルバンテスは最も大きな気配を追って歩き出したが、ある程度まで近づいたある日、ソウルエッジの気配が更に細かく分かれたのを感じ取った。

まさか…。そう感じたセルバンテスは、その地に着くと同時に自分の予感が正しかったことを知る。もう片方のソウルエッジまでもが砕かれてしまったのだ!

その地で拾い集めた幾つかの新たな破片を彼は眺めた。

最早あの力を再び手にする野望は潰えてしまったのだろうか…?

異変に気が付いたのはその時だった。手にした二つの欠片はセルバンテスの身体と共鳴を起し、徐々に彼の手の中で一つに溶け合っていくではないか。すぐさま彼は別の欠片に手を伸ばす…。再びそれは一つになった。

自分の身体の中の破片との共鳴がこの現象を引き起こしていることに彼は気が付いた。彼の体の中の破片が喜びの声を上げるのがはっきりと判るのだ…。そしてソウルエッジに力を与える為には何をする必要があるのか、彼はそれを熟知していた。

それから四年。彼は時には強者の魂を奪い、時には新たな欠片を得ながらソウルエッジの力を徐々に高めることに努めた。いつしか彼の手の破片は剣の形となっていき、それ相応の邪気を放ち始める。しかし彼は以前とは異なり、自らの意志を持ちつづけていた。セルバンテスは邪剣の欠片を体内に持つことで、精神を侵されること無く邪剣を握ることが出来たのだ。

とうとう「彼の」ソウルエッジを手にしたセルバンテス。彼が強い魂とともにソウルエッジの欠片が集まっていく様をただ見過ぐすと考えるのはあまりにも不自然であろう。世界各地でソウルエッジの欠片によって戦士達が動き出した今、彼もまたその野望を実現するために動き出しているに違いない。

いつ、どの闇の中から邪剣を携えて彼が現れるのか。

それを知るのはただ一人、セルバンテス本人だけである…。

5.0.1.16 Charade

年齢： 不明 (数ヶ月?)

出身： 不明

身長： 一定周期で変動を繰り返している

体重： 一定周期で変動を繰り返している

流派： マインドピーピング

その男の一生は決して輝かしいものではなかった。若いうちから力に優れ、冒険を夢見た少年が育った村の外で見たものは、厳しい現実だった。村で褒め称えられたその腕は、広い世界においては決して突出しているわけでは無かったのだ。その後、戦乱に荒れた時代を生きた男は、遂に成功への手がかりを掴むことに成功する。流れの商人が持っていた金属片…。お守りと称されたその金属片を見た彼は有り金を全て使い、商人が持つ全ての金属片を買い取ったのである。

その夜薄暗いランプの明かりの元で彼は入手した破片を眺めつつ、以前旅の剣士から聞いた話を思い出していた…。

全ての武器をも凌ぐ最強の武器、ソウルエッジ。酒場で飲んでいた連中には、誰一人として信じる者がいなかったが彼は違った。剣士の目に何か感じるところがあったのである。彼は剣士の後を追いつき、詳しい話を聞き出そうとした。最初は剣士も何か情報が得られるかもしれないと思ったのだろう。だが結局彼が何も知らないとなると、それ以上は語らずに去っていった。

それはたいした話ではなかったのかもしれない。だが、彼の興味をひくには充分だった。彼は彼なりにソウルエッジを追い、世間からは夢見がちな奇人扱いをされながら生きてきたのだ。

…その彼の目の前に今この瞬間、追い求めてきた物がある。彼は妙な確信を以って、この金属片こそがソウルエッジの一部だと信じていた。

それからしばらくして、彼は盗賊に殺されたのである。金属片を大事に扱いすぎた結果、何か高価な品を溜め込んでいるという噂が流れたためであった。もちろん盗賊達の目にかなう品など、彼は持っていなかった。盗賊達はいつもそうするように犠牲者の死体を無造作に谷へ投げ込むと、去っていった。

ところで彼の執着はよほど強かったと見える。谷に捨てられた彼の骸は、死んでなお金属片をしっかりと握り、決してその手から離してはいなかったのだ…。

そして数ヶ月。彼の手に残った破片が全て、いつのまにか無くなっているのに気が付いた者はいなかった。確実に破片は消えていた。...幾つかの不完全な死体を残して。ただ何かが這っていったような跡が死者達の脇に残されていたが、それもやがて降り出した雨によって消えてしまった。

...その生物、いや生物かどうかは定かではないが、それは確実に歩いていた。...己の意思で。それは思考というよりは、本能に近いものだった。

死んだ男の手の中で、その血を吸って一つと成ったその姿。
再び形を成す為に、仲間を求めて彷徨うその姿。
同じ邪気を持つ破片を貪欲に取り込み、確実に成長していくその姿。
出会う者の心の奥に潜む思考を感じ取り、それに合わせて反応するその姿...

かつてソウルエッジを求めた男が最期に手にした金属片は、まざれもなく本物であったのだ...!

=====

5.1 English site
5.1.1 History
5.1.1.00 Prologue

Transcending history and the world,
a tale of souls and swords, eternally retold.
Anonymous

Chosen by history, a man becomes a warrior.
Engraved into history, a warrior becomes a hero.
Song by a 14th century troubadour

Countless legends surround a sword known as Soul Edge. Some claim it was the ultimate weapon. Others refer to it as the "Sword of Heroes." ...A phantom sword with immeasurable power of the spirits...the key to eternal youth...treasure without equal...a panacea to cure all illness... There are even those who consider it the "Sword of Salvation."

Although no one could ever be certain of the sword's whereabouts or true identity, various rumors and folklore spread across the world. In reality, Soul Edge was comprised of twin blades that fed on human souls.

In the latter half of the 16th century, a warrior on a divine mission for the ancient god of forge successfully shattered one of the evil blades. Tragically, shattering the sword produced the opposite effect of what was intended. The balance of power between the swords was destroyed, and the evil of the blades spiraled out of control; its malevolent energy diffused into the sky in a form of eerie light. The phenomenon, which later became known as the Evil Seed, scarred the world with its evil legacy.

The remaining sword possessed the body of a man who took the evil blade into his hands and embarked on a killing spree throughout Europe. Macabre accounts of merciless killings spread fear throughout the entire continent.

Yet the massacres ceased after three years. Four more years passed, and the horrors became a distant memory and people felt safe once again.

...No one knew.

Four years before, a spirit sword named Soul Calibur appeared from the East, as if to answer the call of the raging Soul Edge. No one witnessed the final battle to the death where Soul Edge was shattered. No one knew that the spirit sword was left behind in the vortex of evil to stop the demon sword's powers.

Most people were oblivious to the fact that the peace that followed was the result of this battle, and the spirit sword's existence remained a mystery.

Unfortunately, the peace was merely a facade; the evil blade began spreading its influence, quietly yet surely, throughout the world once again. People unwittingly transported the sword to every corner of the world in the form of metal shards. These pieces of Soul Edge still embodied evil powers. With Soul Calibur lost in the void, it was only a matter of time before the evil sword's dark powers infected the entire world.

The following tales of swords and souls are of those who pursued Soul Edge for their own convictions and reasons...

5.1.1.01 Astaroth

Age

Recently Resurrected

7 Years Since Initial Creation

Birthplace

Unknown

Heretical order Fygul Cestemus

The Grand Shrine of Palgaea

Height

6'4"

Weight

287 lbs.

Birth Date

September 3

Blood Type

None

Weapon

Giant Ax

Weapon Name

Kulutues

Discipline

Gyulkus

Family

Servants of Ares

The God of War

There are several things that cause monsters.
The first is the glory of God.

Ambroise Pare, Animaux, monstres et prodiges

The evil sword Soul Edge continued to gorge upon human hatred and threatened to envelop the entire world with its fragments...

Hephaestus, the Olympian god of forge, was not the only god who took notice of the sword's power. But unlike Hephaestus, who bore misgivings about Soul Edge, the other god was genuinely intrigued with the weapon. To Ares, the god of war, the evil blade's cursed origins and nature were of little concern. He simply wished to possess Soul Edge for himself.

Ultimately, the conflict of the two gods' desires began to unfold in the human world.

Ares looked to a heretical order to help him obtain Soul Edge. The desert-dwelling cult worshipped him as Palgaea the Executioner. Receiving Ares' oracle to seek the sword, the grand priest Kunpaetku used the cult's black arts to create a golem. The grand priest named the golem Astaroth, bestowed it with a giant ax infused with a powerful curse, and sent it on a mission to search for the evil blade.

Kunpaetku secretly desired Soul Edge for himself, for the sword bore a power that even the gods sought after. But deceiving a god was no easy task. Little did the grand priest know that Ares' servant, Ker-the agent of death- dwelled within Astaroth.

Contrary to its creator's intentions, Astaroth sought after Soul Edge for the god of war. When Astaroth eventually found it, the sword was in a weakened state, having lost half of itself in battle. Deciding that his god would not be pleased with the blade in this condition, the golem followed the orders of Nightmare (who wielded the sword at the time) and slaughtered countless victims in order to strengthen the unholy weapon. Astaroth became the subject of bitter hatred for those who managed to survive his innumerable massacres

Three years later, the blade had recovered its power, and the time was nearing for Astaroth to take Soul Edge from Nightmare's grasp. But Astaroth never saw his opportunity. Of all the souls harboring hatred for Astaroth, one soul with an irrepressible desire for vengeance reached Nightmare's stronghold in Ostrheinsburg and destroyed the golem. This man sought to avenge his comrades who were slain by Astaroth.

Although from a human standpoint Astaroth was a wicked being, he was nevertheless the servant of a god. Immediately after his servant was destroyed, the infuriated god of war unleashed his punishment. The ground buckled beneath the man-who was already seriously wounded from the battle-and he disappeared into the earth. So sudden were these events that the man had nary a moment to rejoice in his victory.

Soon after the battle against Astaroth, the revenge seeker's friends defeated Nightmare and shattered Soul Edge. They searched for the slayer of Astaroth for some time, but they eventually lost hope of finding him and left. For a while thereafter, peace returned to the world.

Four years passed since that time.

Had Astaroth simply been a creation of a mere mortal, it would have been an

impossible feat. Nevertheless, the god of war's divine powers and Ker, the agent of death, along with the soil in Ostrheinsburg made it feasible. The Ostrheinsburg grounds, sated with the blood of those slain by Nightmare and cursed by their deep-seated hatred of him, acted as the perfect medium for Astaroth's resurrection.

When he was destroyed, Astaroth lost much of the weaknesses he had obtained as a result of being created with the aid of human hands. Moreover, during his regeneration, his new body absorbed several Soul Edge fragments that were nearby. This made Astaroth far more powerful and merciless.

Eventually, Astaroth must have remembered his purpose, for he hefted his familiar ax and vanished into the mist.

5.1.1.02 Cassandra Alexandra

Age

21

Birthplace

Athens

Ottoman Empire

Height

5'5"

Weight

Unknown

Birth Date

July 20

Blood Type

B

Weapon

Short Sword & Small Shield

Weapon Name

Omega Sword & Nemea Shield

Discipline

Athenian Style

Family

Father Achelous

Mother Nike

Brother Lucius

Older Sister Sophitia

Sophitia married Rothion the blacksmith and gave birth to Pyrrha and Patroklos

Here I sit, forming men in my image, a race to resemble me:
To suffer, to weep, to enjoy, to be glad-and never to heed you,
like me.

It was seven years earlier that Sophitia, Cassandra's missing older sister, returned with the mysterious Asian woman.

Upon her return, Sophitia explained that Hephaestus, the ancient Olympian god of the forge and fire, had given her a divine oracle to seek out Soul Edge and destroy it.

Nobody believed her sister's fantastic story except Cassandra. She knew that Sophitia was not the sort of person who lied. She also witnessed the Asian woman extract a fragment of the evil sword from Sophitia's body, while treating wounds she received when one of Soul Edge's blades was shattered.

Therefore, it was no surprise to Cassandra when Sophitia disappeared again shortly before her marriage. She was certain that her sister had left to contend with Soul Edge.

As if to answer the concern of her family, Cassandra's sister returned after a few years, her face glowing with contentment as she spoke of cleansing the lands contaminated by the evil of Soul Edge. Soon after, she married a blacksmith, had two children, and led a happy family life.

One day, after running some errands for the bakery where she worked, Cassandra visited Sophitia's home. As she looked into the sleeping faces of her sister's young children, she jokingly spoke to them. "Pyrrha, Patroklos, listen to me carefully. If you don't hold on tight to your mother, she might go running off again to carry out god's duties."

Cassandra's sister smiled and laughed, then assured Cassandra that she no longer heard oracles from god.

It was then that Cassandra's brother-in-law returned home after a day's work. The children jumped out of their beds and ran to greet their father, who carried in his hand a mysterious metal fragment. Fascinated with the metal scrap, the children grabbed it from their father's hand and tugged it away from each other greedily. The way they fought over the piece of metal seemed unnatural-almost as if the children were trying to take back something that belonged to them.

Cassandra recognized the metal. It was a fragment of Soul Edge.

Knowing exactly what her children's reactions meant, Sophitia collapsed, shrieking.

Cassandra grabbed the metal away from the hands of the children quickly and shouted, "Dear Sister! What could be so terrible about this thing? What could this possibly do? Get a hold of yourself! And you call yourself the divine warrior who answered the voice of god?"

Filled with anger, Cassandra rushed out of the house and ran to the Hephaestus Shrine. "Why are you doing this to my sister? How can you claim to be an almighty god? Answer me!" she screamed at the shrine, her voice reverberating throughout the desolate holy ground. Cassandra collapsed on the floor, worn out from shouting. It was then that she saw the weapon. It was the holy sword blessed by the god of forge; Sophitia and her husband offered it to Hephaestus after their marriage. Even after all this time, the sword had not lost its gleam despite being exposed to the elements for four years.

Cassandra held the fragment of Soul Edge up to the blessed sword. The fragment

resonated and gave off a faint wailing sound-almost as if it was frightened of the holy object.

She realized then that Soul Edge was still alive. But she could not allow her sister to carry the burden, with a family who depended on her. Cassandra decided that she would put an end to the evil sword herself.

Cassandra did not trust Hephaestus, but the power to defeat the evil was right before her.

As night gave way to dawn, nothing disturbed the temple's tranquility. Cassandra was nowhere to be seen. However, something was amiss-the holy weapon was missing from the temple.

5.1.1.03 Isabella "Ivy" Valentine

Age

32

Birthplace

London, British Empire

Height

5'10"

Weight

128 lbs.

Birth Date

December 10

Blood Type

Unknown

Weapon

Snake Sword

Weapon Name

Valentine (Ivy Blade)

Discipline

Unrelated Link

Family

Adoptive parents deceased

Birth father Cervantes

Birth mother deceased

She is the one who hides her secrets.

Max Ernst, La Femme 100 Tetes

Count Valentine, a practitioner of alchemy, was driven insane by his pursuit for Soul Edge-also known as the "Key to Eternal Youth." By the time of his death, his efforts to search for Soul Edge drained his family's fortunes and left one

of London's most distinguished families in ruins.

As if to pursue her husband into death, the Countess fell ill and passed away soon after Count Valentine's death. This left Ivy as the sole surviving member of the Valentine family.

In reality, Ivy was not a true Valentine by birth. The Count and Countess found her abandoned in front of their mansion when she was an infant, and she was taken into the family as an adopted child. Ivy discovered this secret only after reading a will left behind by the Countess in her death. But this did not matter to her, for the Valentines were the only parents she knew.

Obedying the last wishes of her adoptive father, Ivy continued the search for Soul Edge and studied alchemy. During this investigation, she uncovered the true nature of the sword-it was an evil blade that feasted on souls. In order to avenge the death her father, who was driven insane by the allure of Soul Edge, Ivy vowed to use all of her knowledge to destroy it. She invoked strange powers through occult rituals to summon a mysterious individual who gave life to the whip-like, mechanical sword she dubbed "Ivy Blade."

The sword, which had a will of its own, accompanied and protected Ivy on her journey to vanquish Soul Edge.

When she crossed paths with Nightmare-the one who breathed life into her sword-she agreed to assist him in the "summoning of souls." Little did she know that it was all part of the evil sword's plans.

Ivy realized it was Nightmare who possessed Soul Edge. She came to this revelation only after he was defeated and the evil blade was shattered. That meant that the beloved blade she had forged to destroy Soul Edge had life thanks to the power of the evil blade. She also learned the secrets of her true lineage.

Ivy's birth father...he once wielded Soul Edge and was manipulated by its wicked powers!

Shaken by the horrifying truth, Ivy returned home and locked herself away in a dark laboratory. She tried countless times to destroy Ivy Blade, which was now a symbol of her self-hatred and regret. She could not, however, bring herself to actually break the sword. "I am the same as this sword... Yes, the blood of the evil blade flows through me. The same blood..."

Ivy Blade waited for its master's orders silently.

After months of soul searching, Ivy emerged with renewed resolve. Her goal was no longer to destroy the evil sword, but to completely wipe it out of existence. As a vow to her commitment, she renamed her sword "Valentine." And when she acquired information about fragments of Soul Edge being scattered throughout the world, she immediately departed on her new journey.

Ivy intended to destroy every fragment of Soul Edge, anyone who carried its tainted bloodline, and anyone contaminated by its evil. Nothing would stop her from destroying the root of the evil, even if it meant killing the innocent-there would be no exceptions. The only thing that mattered was obliterating the evil sword's existence completely. "...Call me a monster, a demon if you must. I'll be happy to be called those names if it is the price I must pay to eliminate the existence of the evil blade!!"

This was the beginning of her long, arduous journey. A journey where she would ultimately have to destroy herself and all that was related to her.

Ivy's adoptive family name "Valentine" became a symbol of her will to live as a "human" even though the cursed blood of the demonic blade ran strong within her.

5.1.1.04 Kilik

Age
23

Birthplace
Unknown
Raised in Ling-Sheng Su Temple
Ming Empire

Height
5'6"

Weight
139 lbs.

Birth Date
February 9

Blood Type
A

Weapon
Rod

Weapon Name
Kali-Yuga

Discipline
Secret Art of Ling-Sheng Su Style Rod

Family
Murdered everyone at Ling-Sheng Su Temple where he was raised
Master Edgemaster

Man reaches, stumbles forward, painfully, mistakenly sometimes.
Having stepped forward, he may slip back, but only half a step,
never the full step back.

John Steinbeck, The Grapes of Wrath

Kilik was an orphan found abandoned on Ling-Sheng Su Mountain as an infant. The elders at the temple took him in and cared for him as their own. Martial arts became a part of his daily life from a young age, and Kilik became especially fond of fighting with the rod. By his sixteenth year, he became so proficient with the weapon that he was selected as the successor of the secret arts of the rod.

The Ling-Sheng Su Temple had three sacred treasures, one of which was a rod known as Kali-Yuga. Becoming the successor of the secret art meant that this revered treasure would eventually be passed down to him. Tragically, the Evil Seed rained down upon the temple the night before the succession ceremony.

Driven insane by the Evil Seed, the residents of the temple butchered one another in a bloody riot. An elderly man found an exhausted Kilik the following morning and saved him from imminent death. He was the lone survivor of the ordeal. The Ling-Sheng Su Temple, which had once flourished with martial arts students, was forever obliterated from the face of the earth.

When Kilik awoke, he found himself in an old man's hermitage. Along with Kali-Yuga, Dvapara-Yuga, a mirrored sash that was one of the three sacred treasures, rested on his shoulder. Dvapara-Yuga belonged to Xianglian, another orphan at the temple who had been like an older sister to him.

The Evil Seed had spun Kilik's destructive instincts out of control. When he regained his sanity, he was already wearing Dvapara-Yuga. He realized the sacred treasure must have cleansed the evil energy from his body. The only person who could have placed Dvapara-Yuga on him was Xianglian.

And he had killed her.

He had taken Xianglian's life. She would have survived had she kept Dvapara-Yuga on herself. Instead, she gave the mirrored sash to Kilik and lost her life after being overcome by madness. Why did she sacrifice herself in order to save him? And what was Kilik supposed to live for, when everyone he loved had been slain by his own hands?

After a long period of self-loathing and blame, Kilik concluded that the only thing he could do was to destroy the evil resident within him. "The root of all the evil is Soul Edge," the elderly man said. He said this as if he had been waiting for Kilik to reach this conclusion by himself. "You, along with Kali-Yuga, which absorbs spiritual energy, have been filled with evil power ever since that fateful night. Dvapara-Yuga is the only thing that maintains the balance between good and evil."

The old man, who lived alone in a remote region, turned out to be a martial arts advisor for the Ling-Sheng Su Temple.

Under the advisor's tutelage, Kilik learned the secret art of the Ling-Sheng Su style rod and techniques to control the evil energy within both Kali-Yuga and himself. In time, Kilik left on a journey to destroy the demonic sword. During his travels, Xianghua and Maxi joined Kilik on his quest.

They eventually reached Nightmare's stronghold but were surrounded by Nightmare's horde. Through Maxi's selfless actions, Kilik and Xianghua were able to slash their way through the endless waves of foes to reach Nightmare. They challenged their powerful adversary, and a fierce battle ensued. Ultimately, the power of Xianghua's Soul Calibur prevailed- they succeeded in destroying the evil blade.

Dvapara-Yuga shattered during the violent encounter against Nightmare. It was then that Kilik realized the evil within his body remained under control, even without the sacred treasure. During the long journey, he had gained the ability to suppress the demonic powers within him.

For some time, Xianghua and Kilik searched for Maxi, but could find nary a trace of the lost pirate. The two of them eventually went their separate ways- Kilik returned to his master in order to perfect the technique of neutralizing and purifying the evil energy over time.

Four years had passed since the fateful battle.

One day, Kilik sensed a malevolent aura- it had the same energy as the wicked, demonic blade. Soul Edge still existed! Merely shattering the weapon had not destroyed it. "If brute strength alone wasn't enough to destroy Soul Edge, would it be possible to absorb all of its powers into Kali-Yuga?" Kilik wondered. "Kali-Yuga can absorb any form of energy, so it should be possible to keep all of the blade's evil power under my control. Then I can try to purify it over time..."

He then realized the enormity of his plan. Four years had passed since he'd begun his training, yet he had been unable to completely purify the evil inside his body. It would take a long time to purge the colossal amount of demonic energy possessed by Soul Edge, but it did not matter- his mind was made up. Kilik was willing to make the sacrifice as a means to atone for the deaths he caused.

Even if it took an entire lifetime.

5.1.1.05 Maxi

Age

28

Birthplace

Ryukyu Kingdom

Height

5'8"

Weight

126 lbs.

Birth Date

May 1

Blood Type

O

Weapon

Nunchaku

Weapon Name

Soryuju

Discipline

Shissen Karihadi

Family

Both parents deceased

His crew slain by Astaroth

We lose the certain things, while we seek the uncertain ones.

Latin Proverb

Maxi, the pirate from Ryukyu (present-day Okinawa, Japan), led a crew of

trustworthy men and lived carefree on the high seas. Having traveled throughout the seas of Asia, Maxi looked to the west for new lands to explore and sailed a southerly route towards Europe. While docked at a harbor in India, he encountered Kilik, a young man searching for Soul Edge.

Unfortunately, this proved to be a star-crossed encounter.

The hidden evil resident within Kilik attracted unwanted attention from a horde of monsters. The ensuing battle took the lives of Maxi's crew, who were helpless against these nightmarish foes. Kilik and Maxi were the only survivors of the bloody carnage.

After the massacre, Maxi traveled with Kilik and swore to seek revenge for his fallen comrades. Maxi was certain that Astaroth, the leader of the monsters, would appear before Kilik once again.

Xianghua later joined their journey, and the three of them headed towards Europe. The travels through unfamiliar lands strengthened the friendships between Maxi and his new companions.

Eventually, the group made their way into Nightmare's stronghold. Nightmare, who possessed Soul Edge, commanded his horde to attack the intruders. Maxi recognized them as the same monsters that murdered his crew; he knew that his sworn enemy was nearby. Almost as if to acknowledge Maxi's presence, a hulking silhouette emerged from the shadows.

Maxi forced his companions to go on while he stayed behind to confront Astaroth. He used every ounce of his strength and avenged his fallen crew by destroying the golem, but at a price- Maxi suffered grave injuries during the battle.

Immediately after Astaroth's defeat, the outraged god of war commanded the earth to swallow up the weakened pirate. Unconscious, Maxi fell into a river that flowed deep underground and was carried away quietly by its icy currents.

Above ground, the only trace of Maxi left behind was his nunchaku.

When Maxi awoke, he found himself resting on a riverbank. His mind was lucid, but he could not feel his extremities. He soon realized that he had suffered debilitating injuries that prevented him from moving freely.

Fortunately, a person from a nearby village rescued Maxi, and took him to the village. With his vast knowledge, strong sense of duty, and likeable personality, it did not take long for Maxi to be accepted by the villagers. After some time, his strength began to return, but his arms and legs would not heal- it seemed unlikely that he would be able to return to his carefree, nomadic lifestyle.

Nevertheless, Maxi was satisfied with his new life. He had exacted his revenge against the one responsible for his crew's death. Although he was curious about Kilik and Xianghua's fortunes, as long as the peace continued, he believed that they had vanquished the root of the evil. "I wouldn't mind spending the rest of my life here in this village," thought Maxi.

Four years passed, then a rumor reached the village. "When the enormous man with a gigantic axe comes through... Nothing remains in his wake!"

Maxi had a horrible feeling that it was him. The more information he gathered, the more convinced he became that it was indeed Astaroth. "That freak is still alive. How can I be here, living peacefully, when I haven't avenged my crew?" Unfortunately, his limbs still refused to move.

As if he were reading Maxi's mind, an elderly village medicine man paid him a visit. "If you wish to gain something of value, then you must part with something of equal value," counseled the elder.

Maxi implored the elder and convinced him to treat his injuries with his secret arts. The elder had found a peculiar rare metal fragment recently and used that precious item for the mysterious treatment.

Several days later, Maxi left the village with the promise to return one day.

In exchange for the restoration of his limbs to seek revenge, Maxi lost something just as precious as the slain comrades he swore to avenge- the memories of Kilik and Xianghua.

5.1.1.06 Heishiro Mitsurugi

Age

29

Birthplace

Bizen

Japan

Height

5'7"

Weight

143 lbs.

Birth Date

June 8

Blood Type

AB

Weapon

Katana

Weapon Name

Shishi-Oh

Discipline

Tenpu-Kosai-Ryu Kai

Family

Parents and siblings all taken by sickness

Carnivores never become corpulent.

Anthelme Brillat-Savarin, La Physiologie du Gout

Mitsurugi was born in Japan to a peasant family during a time of war. Nevertheless, this did not stop him from becoming a renowned mercenary. His reputation earned him nicknames such as "The Mercenary of War," "One Man Army," and "Demon."

As a mercenary, Mitsurugi fought in and triumphed over countless battles. Every enemy who faced him in combat feared his invincible blade. That was until a new breed of weapon was introduced. Rifles known as Tanegashima were brought in for practical use by the famous shogun Nobunaga Oda.

For Mitsurugi, who relied purely on his strength and skill, the Tanegashima was a serious threat. Simply by holding this "pipe," even the lowliest foot soldier could become a powerful force on the battlefield. Unable to accept such a preposterous notion, Mitsurugi looked for ways to defeat the rifle. Unfortunately, he could not find a good way to overcome the new weapon. Frustrated, Mitsurugi challenged Tanegashima to a duel, but lost when he was shot through the right shoulder.

But this did not deter Mitsurugi's spirit. He resolved to defeat the rifle by finding a powerful weapon that would enable him to achieve this goal. It was then that he heard a rumor from overseas about Soul Edge. At the time, a man known as Nightmare wielded the giant, grotesquely shaped blade. Hearing stories of its immense powers, Mitsurugi set off across the ocean in pursuit of the sword without a moment's hesitation.

He headed west towards Europe, where Nightmare supposedly roamed. Travels through foreign countries were difficult for Mitsurugi, who was unable to understand the languages of the places he visited. Nonetheless, he continued his travel, making ends meet by fighting battles as a mercenary. The added benefit of his mercenary lifestyle was that he was able to maintain his fighting form.

But time was callous and unforgiving. Eventually, rumors that Nightmare had disappeared reached Mitsurugi, and Soul Edge's trail ran cold. Mitsurugi was still unwilling to give up, and continued his search around the world's battlefields for signs of the ultimate blade.

Four years after his quest had begun, while visiting a castle near the Ming frontier, Mitsurugi stumbled upon the trail of Soul Edge. It was a metal fragment of Soul Edge that he came across by accident.

Walking past one of the back alleys of the city, Mitsurugi came to a halt when he witnessed several assassins surrounding a gravely wounded man. When the assassins saw Mitsurugi, they pounced upon him, intending to leave no eyewitnesses behind. A vicious melee ensued, and Mitsurugi drove back the assailants, saving the man's life as a result.

The badly injured man handed Mitsurugi a piece of metal-perhaps he thought that he would be unable to accomplish his mission with his wounds. He asked Mitsurugi to keep it safe. He seemed afraid to let it fall into someone else's hands, but he would not explain any further. Without another word, the man vanished into a dark alley.

Looking at the metal fragment in his hand, Mitsurugi pondered, "If Soul Edge was so powerful, why would it shatter?"

Mitsurugi had a difficult time believing the man who gave him the fragment, but there was no denying the sincerity in the man's eyes. "Besides," Mitsurugi reasoned, "why would a man on the verge of death lie to a complete stranger?"

Soon after, a grave story circulated through the castle. Apparently, a servant of the Ming Emperor arrived at the castle, demanding the "Sword of Heroes." When the servant steadfastly refused to leave without the sword, the lord of the castle slew him, exclaiming that he could not turn over something he did not have. "War is coming," thought Mitsurugi.

He sensed the same storm brewing that he had felt before in countless battlefields.

5.1.1.07 Nightmare

Age
Unknown

Birthplace
Unknown

Height
5'6"

Weight
209 lbs.

Birth Date
Unknown

Blood Type
Unknown

Weapon
Soul Edge - Zweihander Type

Weapon Name
Soul Edge - Male

Discipline
Original Style
Styles memorized by Soul Edge

Family
Unknown

What a chimera, then, is man! What a novelty! What a monster,
what a chaos, what a contradiction, what a prodigy!

Blaise Pascal Pensees

At one time, Nightmare committed countless cold-blooded murders while under the control of Soul Edge. All who knew of him feared his crimson gaze and his strange, one-eyed, giant blade.

Originally, he was the leader of a group of brigands known as the Black Wind, whose stronghold was located in the Black Forest near the Roman Empire. It was news of his father's death that drove him from his marauding lifestyle, resolving to find his father's killer.

Hearing word of a sword known as Soul Edge, he became convinced that he could slay his father's murderer if he found this ultimate weapon. He searched through the battlegrounds in every region he traveled. Eventually, he came across a sword in a Spanish harbor that emitted a strange aura beside the corpse of its

owner, who appeared to be a pirate. The dead body returned to life, covered in flames, as if to protect the sword. Upon defeating the apparition, he reached for the hilt of the mysterious blade.

It was then that he heard the voice of Soul Edge, the sword that feeds on souls.

It told him that if he used the souls absorbed by the sword, he would be able to resurrect his father. Accepting his new goal, the man's body began to surge with the evil energy of the sword. The energy became a beautiful pillar of light that pierced the evening sky and dissipated into the atmosphere.

From that moment on, the man became Nightmare, the evil knight who would strike fear into every corner of Europe.

Having determined that the power Soul Edge had at that moment was insufficient to revive his father, Nightmare attacked village after village to nourish the blade. Not satisfied, he sought out those with strong souls to feed the evil sword.

The killings ended three years later, when Nightmare came across three sacrifices for his blade. One of them wielded a spirit sword called Soul Calibur, which possessed an aura that was the polar opposite of the evil power emitted by Soul Edge. The battle between the swordsmen took place in a vortex of hellfire and evil energy summoned by Soul Edge. After a raging battle, the evil sword shattered, and both Nightmare and Soul Edge fell into the collapsing void.

With Soul Edge severely weakened, Nightmare regained some of his humanity. Along with lucidity came the horrifying memories of the sins he committed, as well as the fear and anger of those who were slaughtered by him. Moreover, he realized that he had been the one who murdered his father.

Expelled from the void into an unfamiliar place, Nightmare disappeared into the night—the evil sword still in his grip. But Soul Edge was weaker now, and splinters of itself were left in Nightmare's footsteps.

He knew Soul Edge must never fall into the hands of another man. He set off to go as far away as possible from human settlements.

Yet each morning, he awakened to the sight of people slain by him during the night. While he slept, Soul Edge took over his mind and flesh, and he was burdened by this new guilt. Nevertheless, he did not choose to take his own life and end things easily. He knew that if he died, the sword would only find a new host to continue its evil ways. The only solution was to find a place where the evil could be imprisoned forever.

Initially, the balance of power between him and the sword were equal. But as time wore on, his control over his body became irregular, and the sword held sway over him for slightly longer periods of time.

The number of those who fell victim to the blade continued to grow. The sword healed itself gradually by feeding off the victims' souls. After four years, the sword had nearly recovered to full strength.

The fragments of itself lost during its escape...The evil energy dispersed as the Evil Seed...Soul Edge's shattered companion blade...the other Soul Edge...

With dominant control over its host body, Soul Edge, once again in the form of "Nightmare," began to pursue the fragments of itself that it had lost. It was on a quest to restore itself completely!

But at the same time, he continued to fight the evil sword's plans with the little sanity left within him.

5.1.1.08 Raphael Sorel

Age

32

Birthplace

Rouen

French Empire

Height

5'10"

Weight

159 lbs.

Birth Date

November 27

Blood Type

A

Weapon

Rapier Sword

Weapon Name

Flambert

Discipline

La Rapier de Sorel

Family

Foster daughter Amy

Cut family ties with worthless relatives

A vice begins by choice. But through things such as heredity, intelligence, and mental exhaustion, this choice becomes something inexplicable, or is refined into something criminal.

Jean Cocteau, Opium: Journal Dune Desintoxication

During the 16th century, France was amidst religious strife. Raphael, the young master of the Sorel Family, grew up with the tumultuous age as his cradle, the scheming of noble families as his lullaby, and the rapier and medicine as his playmates. His cool, unemotional demeanor created many enemies, but his quick and precise decision-making and execution skills solidified the foundation of his family amongst the nobles.

Unfortunately, Raphael made a critical mistake during the year of the notorious Evil Seed catastrophe. He discovered too late that one member of nobility supported by the Sorel clan became insane from the effects of the Evil Seed. Consequently, Raphael gave his enemies the justification to come after him. To make matters worse, treacherous members of his family who were thrust into the

conflict surrendered quickly and offered to hand over Raphael in order to protect themselves.

Raphael hid himself in an impoverished town to escape from his pursuers, which included his family members. But accustomed to a life of privilege without want, Raphael could not bear the cold and hunger he suffered in the slums. He most certainly would have died if it were not for a little girl named Amy, who hid the weakened Raphael from his enemies.

For the little girl, helping Raphael was only a simple deed motivated out of spite for the soldiers. For Raphael, a man who until then lived by his own means, it marked the first time he owed his life to someone else. He felt emotions that he had never experienced before, and Amy became an irreplaceable presence in Raphael's life.

Raphael's exposure to life in the slums made him see the world in a whole new light, and realize the meaninglessness of everything. Nobles quarreled constantly and only thought of their petty interests and self-preservation. And the commoners, tired of constant warring, had given up hope. The world was filled with people whose soulless, meaningless lives made them no better than the dead.

Convinced that the chaos of war was no place to live a meaningful life, Raphael took Amy and left the poverty-stricken town. Avoiding war-torn lands, they moved to a town in the countryside. But even with the new surroundings, he could not get Amy to open her heart to the world. Even though her life in the slums strengthened the 10-year old girl's wariness of life and gave her a tenacious will to live, it erased any sense of hope she had for the future.

Assuming a false name, Raphael befriended a rich noble to obtain the means to take care of the young girl. He employed his cunning to gain the trust of the lord and those around him. And when the opportunity arose, Raphael poisoned the noble and spread word that the "lord had left on a long journey."

One day, Raphael found a letter with references to the Evil Seed- the turning point in his life - in the mansion library. He was fascinated by the information, and it wasn't long before he made the connection between the Evil Seed and Soul Edge.

Soul Edge- a demonic blade that promises power in exchange for one's sanity.

What if such a sword were thrust into the hands of the pathetic nobles? They would undoubtedly fight feverishly for the weapon, and ultimately destroy themselves. Commoners would be unfortunate victims of the war, but their existence mattered little, for they were no better off than the dead. It would all be worth it if the petty, war-mongering nobles could be eliminated to secure a meaningful future for Amy.

But in order to accomplish his goal, Raphael needed Soul Edge; he was determined to obtain the sword by any means necessary.

A grand, insane plan was brewing in his mind- all for the sake of a young girl.

5.1.1.09 Taki

Birthplace

Fu-Ma No Sato

Japan

Height

5'7"

Weight

117 lbs.

Birth Date

Unknown

Blood Type

A

Weapon

Ninja Swords

Weapon Name

Rekki-Maru & Mekki-Maru

Discipline

Musoh-Battoh-Ryu

Family

Master Toki

Immediate family all taken by

This document is copyright DLG and hosted by VGM with permission.